

# ENGLISH



HELLO!  
**ENGLISH**  
For PREPARATORY Schools

YEAR ONE

Hello prep Year 1

الصف الأول الإعدادي

# Mr. Ahmed El-gamal

Name : .....

Class : .....

## Unit 10

## Facts and figures

## حقائق و أرقام

## Aims of the unit

- 1- Read about facts and figures.
- 2- Listen to conversations about measurements.
- 3- Use adverbs.
- 4- Write about a famous building.
- 5- Ask and answer about using a computer and the internet.
- 6- Discuss rules for using a computer.

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

facts	حقائق	the ancient Egyptians	المصريين القدماء
figures	الأرقام	the earliest	الأقدم - الأول
glass beads	الخرز الزجاجي ( فصوص )	BCE	قبل حقبة الميلاد
ink	حبر	invention	إختراع
lighthouse	منارة - فئار	teeth	أسنان
paper	ورق	tooth	سنة ( مفرد أسنان )
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	accurately	بدقة
probably	على الأرجح - من المحتمل	the Chinese	الصينيون
all	كل ( يليها اسم جمع )	earlier	في وقت سابق
the tallest	الأطول	papyrus	ورق البردي
structure	مبنى - كيان	water clocks	الساعات المائية
earth	الأرض - الكرة الأرضية	dark	مظلم
difficult words	كلمات صعبة	in English	بالإنجليزية
another language	لغة أخرى	tower	برج
danger	خطر	toothbrush	فرشاة الأسنان
jewellery	مجوهرات	liquid	سائل
coloured	ملون	the hill	التل
swimmer	سباح	the stars	النجوم
made from	مصنوع من	salt	ملح
plants	نباتات	useful	مفيد - نافع
Which ?	أى - أيهما ؟	history	مادة التاريخ
great	عظيم	pens	أقلام حبر
in around	في حدود - حوالى	calendar	التقويم
about	حوالى	How tall?	ما طول ؟
except (for)	عدا - ما عدا	stones	أحجار

## Regular verbs

work ,ed , ed	يعمل	dress ,ed , ed	يرتدى
invent ,ed , ed	يخترع	clean ,ed , ed	ينظف

study ,ied , ied	يدرس	measure , d , d	يقيس
use ,ed , ed	يستعمل	like , d , d	يحب
play ,ed , ed	يلعب	count ,ed , ed	يعد
spell ,ed , ed / t	يتهجى	warn ,ed , ed	يحذر
climb ,ed , ed	يتسلق	paint ,ed , ed	يدهن
time , d , d	يقيس الوقت	Walk ,ed , ed	يمشى

### Irregular verbs

make / made/ made	يصنع	teach / taught / taught	يعلم
tell / told / told	يخبر	write /wrote / wrote	يكتب
drive /drove / driven	يقود - يسوق	swim / swam / swum	يسبح - يعوم
speak / spoke / spoken	يتحدث	sing /sang / sung	يغنى
put / put / put	يضع	sleep / slept / slept	ينام

## Text SB page 2

The ancient Egyptians were the first to do many things.

- The **Lighthouse of Alexandria** was probably the world's first lighthouse. It was about **130 m tall** and was one of the **tallest** structures on earth. People worked **hard** to build the lighthouse. It opened in about **283 BCE**.
- The ancient Egyptians liked to dress **beautifully** and they made the **earliest** glass beads in **around** 1500 BCE.
- Toothpaste was another Egyptian invention. The ancient Egyptians cleaned their teeth very **well**, using toothpaste which they made from salt and plants.
- They also studied the sun and the stars **carefully** to **measure** the days in a year. Then they invented the **calendar** and they taught us to tell the time **accurately** with a water clock.
- The Chinese invented paper in 140 BCE, but many years **earlier**, Egyptians used papyrus for writing. They also invented two of the other **most useful** things in history: pens and ink

### Language notes

old قديم X new جديد

- I sold my **old** car and bought a **new** one.
- They worked more carefully than usual on that **old** building .

ancient أثرى x modern حديث

- The Pyramids are **ancient** buildings.
- The old mobiles were heavier than the **modern** ones.

invent اخترع شيء لم يكن موجوداً من قبل

- The ancient Egyptians **invented** toothpaste.

discover يكتشف شيء موجود هو أول من توصل إليه

- Columbus **discovered** America .

find out يكتشف شيء ليصف به موقف معين

- I **found out** that I was late for school.
- Noha **found out** that the toothpaste tube was empty.

a = per = every = each ( a period of time ) كل + توقيت زمني ( للمفرد )  
 - 7 million tourists visit Egypt **a** year . - I go to the cinema once **a** week.

other صفة بمعنى آخر ويليه اسم جمع  
 - I learn **other** languages easily.  
 - What **other** things did Egyptians invent?

another صفة لاسم مفرد دائما ومعناها آخر  
 - Find out about **another** great Egyptian invention.

others ضمير فاعل أو مفعول بمعنى آخرون ودائما تأتي في حالة الجمع  
 - Some inventions are Egyptian . **Others** are Chinese. ضمير فاعل .  
 - I have two pens, but I can't find the **others**. ضمير مفعول.

good at ويليه اسم أو فعل مضاف له ing سيء في X ماهر في  
 - My cousin is very **good at** playing football. = My cousin is very **good at** football.  
 - Mona is very **bad at** painting . - Soha is very **bad at** art.

bad for ضار بـ  
 - Too much salt can be **bad for** your heart . - Smoking is very **bad for** health .  
 - It is **bad for** your eyes to read at night.

good for = useful to : نافع ، مفيد لـ  
 - Milk is **good for** / **useful to** children . - Molokhia is **good for** health .

time ( n. , v. ) : الوقت ، ( يقيس أو يحسب الوقت )  
 - Going to school doesn't take me much **time** .  
 - We **timed** the weights as they sank .

## Grammar

adverb :

الظرف أو الحال كلمة تأتي لوصف الأفعال وكيفية حدوثها

وتأتي عادة بعد الفعل ، باستثناء بعض الظروف التي تأتي قبل الفعل أو في بداية الجملة .

وعادة نحصل على الظرف **adverb** بإضافة النهاية ( **-ly** ) في نهاية الصفة :

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة	loud عالي	loudly بصوت عالي
slow بطيء	slowly ببطء	sudden مفاجيء	suddenly فجأة
quiet هادىء	quietly بهدوء	strong قوى	strongly بقوة
immediate فوري	immediately فوراً	bad ردىء ، سييء	badly بصورة رديئة
beautiful جميل	beautifully بطريقة جميلة	accurate دقيق	accurately بدقة
noisy صاخب	noisily بصورة صاخبة	careful حريص	carefully بحرص
peaceful مسالم	peacefully بسلام		

☞ He is a **quick** runner . He runs **quickly** . حال صفة

☞ Rania always writes **carefully** .

☞ **Suddenly** , the phone rang .

وعند الحصول على الأحوال **adverbs** من الصفات المنتهية بـ ( **y** ) يسبقها

حرف ساكن ، تتحول الـ ( **y** ) إلى ( **i** ) ثم نضيف النهاية ( **-ly** ) للصفة مثل :

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
happy سعيد	Happily بسعادة	easy سهل	easily بسهولة
heavy ثقيل	heavily على نحو ثقيل	angry غضبان	Angrily بغضب
hungry جائع	hungrily بإشتهاء		

- ☞ This is an **easy** question . صفة
- ☞ He answered the question **easily** . حال
- ☞ She was very **hungry** . ☞ She ate **hungrily** .

وهناك بعض الصفات لا تنطبق عليها القواعد السابقة ( شاذة ) وتحفظ :

<b>good</b>	جيد ، حسن	<b>well</b>	بصورة جيدة	<b>fast</b>	سريع	<b>fast</b>	بسرعة
<b>late</b>	متأخر	<b>late</b>	متأخراً	<b>hard</b>	جاد	<b>hard</b>	بجد

- She was **late** for school . صفة
- She arrived at school **late** . حال
- He is a **hard** worker .
- He works **hard** .

**Comparison of adverbs :** مقارنة الظروف

**beautifully / carefully / accurately / happily / ...**

\* عزيزي الطالب ... عند تساوي درجة الظرف بين شخصين أو شيتين نستخدم :

**..... as + adv. + as .....**

- They worked **as carefully as** usual on that old building .
- She plays the piano **as beautifully as** her music teacher.

\* ونحصل على درجة المقارنة بين إثنين **comparative degree** من الظروف كالآتي :

**... more / less + adv. + than ...**

- They worked **more carefully than** usual on that old building.
- I can sleep **more easily** in my room than the hotel .
- I can sleep in the hotel **less easily** than my room.

\* عند تفضيل شخص أو شيء على مجموعة أشخاص أو أشياء في الظروف

فإننا نستخدم درجة التفضيل **superlative degree** ونحصل عليها كالآتي :

**... the most / least + adv. + the ...**

- Mr Hassan drives **the most carefully** in the family.
- Ahmad liked to dress **the most beautifully** among his friends.
- Ancient Egyptians measured time **the most accurately** with a water clock.
- In my class, I can spell difficult words **the least carefully**.

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار:

- 1- How tall was Alexandria Lighthouse?
  - a) 140m
  - b) 130m
  - c) 150m
- 2- When was it opened?
  - a) 238 BCE
  - b) 239 BCE
  - c) 237 BCE
- 3- What was the Lighthouse of Alexandria used for?
  - It ..... ships about danger.
  - a) Opened
  - b) warned
  - c) cleaned
- 4- What did the tower have on the top ?
  - a) A ship
  - b) A light
  - c) A danger

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Ahmad : Do you like (1) ..... ?  
 Faten : Yes, very much. It's my favourite subject, too.  
 Ahmad : Who were the first to have (2) ..... paper?  
 Faten : The (3) ..... invented paper in 140 BCE.  
 Ahmad : Why did the ancient Egyptians study the sun and the stars?  
 Faten : To (4) ..... the days in a year.

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) **Hazem** : When did people first make glass beads?  
**Amir** : .....
- 2) **Nayra** : ..... ?  
**Eman** : Pens , ink and calendar .

**4. Read the following , then answer the questions :**

The Lighthouse of Alexandria was the first lighthouse in the world. It opened in about 283 BCE. It was the tallest building in the world at the time, except for the Great Pyramid. It was built on the island of Pharos. **It** is a tower with a light that warns ships about danger. The lighthouse was damaged by several earthquakes and eventually became completely ruined. In 1994 some of the remains of the lighthouse were discovered by French archaeologists in Alexandria's Eastern Port.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- When did the Lighthouse open ?  
 2- What was the tallest building at that time ?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

- 3- The Lighthouse is a / an .....  
 a) **island**                      b) **tower**                      c) **danger**                      d) **earthquake**
- 4- The underlined word **it** refers to .....  
 a) **construction**              b) **Alexandria**              c) **The Pyramids**              d) **The Lighthouse**
- 5- The Lighthouse used for ..... ships about danger .  
 a) **warming**                      b) **warning**                      c) **ruining**                      d) **beginning**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :**

- 1- My cousin is very ..... at playing football.  
 a) **well**                      b) **will**                      c) **good**                      d) **badly**
- 2- Fareeda's sewing machine is always very .....  
 a) **noisy**                      b) **noisily**                      c) **noisier**                      d) **more noisy**
- 3- It is an old clock, so it is not very .....  
 a) **accurate**                      b) **accurately**                      c) **more accurate**                      d) **the most accurate**
- 4- The ancient Egyptians liked to dress .....  
 a) **beautifully**              b) **beautiful**                      c) **more beautiful**                      d) **the most beautiful**
- 5- It was about 130 m tall and was one of the ..... structures.  
 a) **tall**                      b) **taller**                      c) **tallest**                      d) **more tall**
- 6- When did people first make glass ..... ?  
 a) **beds**                      b) **beads**                      c) **beans**                      d) **bread**
- 7- The ..... invented paper in 140 BCE,  
 a) **Chinese**                      b) **Egyptians**                      c) **Arab**                      d) **Americans**
- 8- Egyptians used ..... for writing.  
 a) **papyrus**                      b) **toothpaste**                      c) **calendar**                      d) **water clock**
- 9- Hamdi is a ..... swimmer.  
 a) **faster**                      b) **fastest**                      c) **fast**                      d) **faster than**
- 10- Rania is always ..... when she writes.  
 a) **careful**                      b) **more careful**                      c) **carefully**                      d) **most careful**
- 11- The ..... Egyptians studied the sun and the stars.  
 a) **ancient**                      b) **new**                      c) **modern**                      d) **recent**
- 12- I bought ..... shoes from the shoe shop .  
 a) **old**                      b) **new**                      c) **ancient**                      d)

- 14- You can't really ..... which is most dangerous.  
 a) **study**      b) **measure**      c) **teach**      d) **count**
- 15- Carl Benz ..... the first car .  
 a) **studied**      b) **measured**      c) **invented**      d) **counted**
- 16- In 2690 ..... , the Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids.  
 a) **a.m.**      b) **p.m.**      c) **A.D.**      d) **BCE**
- 17- To brush your teeth, use that .....  
 a) **glass beads**      b) **ink**      c) **papyrus**      d) **toothpaste**
- 18- Papyrus is a tall ..... that you can use as paper .  
 a) **vegetables**      b) **plant**      c) **fruit**      d) **juice**
- 19- ..... is a coloured liquid that people use for writing.  
 a) **papyrus**      b) **glass beads**      c) **ink**      d) **toothpaste**
- 20- Glass beads are coloured ..... that people use for jewellery, etc.  
 a) **ink**      b) **plant**      c) **liquid**      d) **balls**
- 21- Soha is very good at .....  
 a) **art**      b) **port**      c) **artist**      d) **part**
- 22- The ..... Egyptians invented the toothpaste.  
 a) **old**      b) **new**      c) **ancient**      d) **modern**
- 23- A horse can run more ..... than a cow .  
 a) **as quick**      b) **quickly**      c) **the quick**      d) **as safe**
- 24- You can live more ..... here .  
 a) **safely**      b) **safety**      c) **safe**      d) **as safe**
- 25- He is two metres tall . He is ..... tall .  
 a) **extreme**      b) **as extreme**      c) **extremely**      d) **extreme as**
- 26- She is ..... . She laughs a lot .  
 a) **sad**      b) **lazy**      c) **cheerful**      d) **unhappy**
- 27- He works as ..... as his friend .  
 a) **slow**      b) **slower**      c) **slowest**      d) **slowly**
- 28- She eats more quickly ..... her mother .  
 a) **as**      b) **then**      c) **than**      d) **for**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Although Ahmad ran fast , the cat ran fastest .
- 2- A horse can run more quick than a cow .
- 3- This building is extreme high .
- 4- Salma slept more peaceful than Ahmad .
- 5- Nouran painted more careful than Noha .
- 6- The nightingale flew happy to its family in the forest .
- 7- When Ahmad was ill , he was sleeping peaceful .
- 8- Rania always writes careful.
- 9- Hamdi swims faster.
- 10- My cousin play football very well.
- 11- It was easy to Waleed to climb the hill.
- 12- Hani climbed the hill easy.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " The Alexandria light house "**

You may use these words: ( **first – tall – build – opened – warns** )  
 I know a lot about the Lighthouse of Alexandria .

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

The Lighthouse of Alexandria was a tower with a light that warns ships about danger. It was about 130 m tall . It opened in about 283 BCE.

**Lessons 3 , 4 & Review**

ruler	مسطرة	poster	ملصق - إعلان
scales	موازين	metres	امتار
stopwatch	ساعة إيقاف - ميقاتي	kilometres	كيلو مترات
tape measure	شريط قياس	centimetres	سنتيمترات
How wide ?	ما عرض؟	hour	ساعة زمن
How heavy ?	ما وزن؟	Burj Khalifa	برج خليفة
How long ?	ما طول ( المسافة / المدة ) ؟	baby	طفل رضيع
How fast ?	ما سرعة؟	Great Pyramids	الأهرامات العظيمة
plane	طائرة	car	سيارة
internet	الانترنت	facts	حقائق
the Nile	النيل	immediately	في الحال- فوراً
skyscraper	ناطحة سحاب	carefully	بعناية
Km/h = kilometres an hour)	كيلو متر في الساعة	the Qasr El Nile bridge	كوبرى قصر النيل
size	حجم	accurately	بدقة
length	طول	websites	مواقع إلكترونية
tickets	تذاكر	never	أبداً - مطلقاً
bags	حقائب	information	معلومات (sing.)
suitcase	حقبيرة أوراق	parent	أحد الوالدين
space	مساحة خالية	runner	عداء
long	طويل للأشياء الأفقية	musician	عازف - موسيقار
wide	عريض	worker	عامل
heavy	ثقيل	typing	كتابة ( آلة كتابة - كومبيوتر)
almost	تقريباً	building	بناء
a present	هدية	box	صندوق
inside	داخل شيء	outside	خارج شيء
visitors	زائرين	the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
Paris	باريس	speed	سرعة
rules	قواعد	safely	بأمان
driver	سائق	Mrs	حرم - سيدة متزوجة
lift	مصعد	stairs	سلالم ثابتة

**Regular verbs**

check ,ed , ed	يتحقق	work ,ed , ed	يعمل
measure , d , d	يقيس	open ,ed , ed	يفتح
walk ,ed , ed	يمشى	Lift ,ed , ed	يرفع
follow ,ed , ed	يتبع	play ,ed , ed	يعزف
check on ,ed , ed	يتفقد	type , d , d	يكتب ( آلة كتابة أو كومبيوتر)
use ,ed , ed	يستخدم	need ,ed , ed	يحتاج
weigh ,ed , ed	يزن	check in ,ed , ed	يسجل بياناته

**Irregular verbs**

run / ran / run	يجرى	fly / flew/ flown	يطير
Shine / shone / shone	يسطع	Keep/ kept/ kept	يحتفظ
can / could / .....	يستطيع	Think/ thought / thought	يعتقد - يفكر
take / took / taken	ياخذ	forget / forgot / forgotten	ينسى
find / found / found	يجد	Give/ gave / given	يعطي
tell / told / told	يخبر	spend / spent / spent	يقضى
buy / bought / bought	يشترى	drive / drove / driven	يقود - يسوق



## Language notes

### Some abbreviations

بعض الاختصارات

- **km/h.** = kilometres an hour

**Kg** = kilogrammes

- **Cm** = centimetres

**M** = metres

\* five point twenty- five kilograms = 5.25 kg

لاحظ أن النقطة بين الأرقام تنطق **point**

### almost

تقريباً وغالباً في الإثبات

A: You can take your school bag with you, Amal.

B: Oh, I **almost** forgot.

### A plane goes = a plane flies

تسافر / تطير الطائرات

- A plane **goes / flies** at about 560 kilometres an hour.

### quite + adverb

إلى حد ما

- Oh! That's very fast! We'll get to Aswan **quite quickly** then!

- The water clock tells the time **quite accurately**.

لاحظ في المثال السابق أنت **quite** قبل الظرف بمعنى إلى حد ما .

### bag

حقيبة سفر أو مدرسة أو حقيبة تسوق

- I have two **bags** one for school and the other for clothes.

- My mother puts groceries in the shopping **bag**.

### suitcase

حقيبة أوراق - يد

- An accountant has a **suitcase** for his paper.

## Language functions

### Wide عرض & width عرض

How **wide** is the bag ? = What **width** is the bag ?

The bag is 40 centimetres **wide**. -The bag is 40 centimetres in **width**. **إسم**  
لاحظ أن الصفة بعد المقاييس تأتي بدون حرف جر. - لاحظ أن الإسم بعد المقاييس مسبق بحرف الجر **in**

### Long الطول الأفقى & length طويل أفقى

- How **long** is the bag ? = What **length** is the bag ?

- We allow bags that are smaller than 55 centimetres **long**.

- We allow bags that are smaller than 55 centimetres **in length**.

الإرتفاع **height** & **طويل رأسياً** ( للإنسان والأشياء الطويلة ) **tall**

- **How tall** is Ahmad ? = **What height** is the skyscraper ?

- The skyscraper is 828 **tall**. = The skyscraper is 828 **in height**.

- Ahmad is 1.85 metres **tall**. = Ahmad is 1.85 metres **in height**.

### How heavy ? = What weight ? للسؤال عن الوزن

- **How heavy** is your bag on scales? = **What weight** is the baby ?

### weigh وزن & weight وزن

- The bag **weighs** 20 kilogrammes. - The baby is 2 kilogrammes **in weight**.

### How fast ? = What speed ? للسؤال عن السرعة

- **How fast** does a plane go, Dad? = **What speed** does a plane go, Dad ?

- A (plane) goes at about 560 km/h. (= 560 kilometres an hour)

## Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

- 1- Where's the Great pyramid ? - At .....
- a) Luxor                      b) Giza                      c) Alexandria
- 2- What is it also known for ? - The Pyramid of .....
- a) Khufu                      b) Qasr El Nil              c) Sphinx
- 3- For how long was it the tallest building ?
- a) 4800 years              b) 2800 years              c) 3800 years
- 4- Who built the Great Pyramid? - The ..... Egyptians .
- a) ancient                      b) new                      c) modern

### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

- Salim : Where can camels live ?
- Ahmad : Camels can live in places where there isn't much water .
- (1) ..... water do camels need each day ?
- Salim : Thirsty camels can drink about fifty (2) ..... of water.
- Ahmad : (3) ..... can camels live without water ?
- Salim : They can live (4) ..... fifteen or sixteen days .
- Ahmad : Thank you very much , Mr Salim .

### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- a) Karim : ..... ?
- Tamer : Lake Nasser is about ten kilometers wide .
- b) Nada : How wide is the world's longest road ?
- Sojoud : .....

### 4. Read the following , then answer the questions:

There are different means of transport. Some people like traveling by air, so they prefer planes. Businessmen prefer planes because they are very fast and comfortable. Some people don't like planes because they think they are dangerous. They like travelling by ship. A ship is not the same speed as a plane, but the sea is very nice and they can enjoy their time. Other people don't like travelling at all. They prefer staying at home watching DVDs!

#### A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Give a suitable title to the passage .
- 2- What does the underlined word ' they ' refer to ?

#### B) Choose the correct answer :

- 3- Businessmen like travelling by .....
- a) bike                      b) plane                      c) car                      d) camel
- 4- A ship is not as ..... as a plane .
- a) fast                      b) big                      c) high                      d) wide
- 5- ..... people don't like travelling at all .
- a) Tall                      b) All                      c) Some                      d) No

### 5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c , or d :

- 1- Heba is young , but Dina is .....
- a) younger                      b) youngest                      c) young                      d) young is
- 2- ..... old are you ?
- a) How heavy                      b) How wide                      c) How                      d) How long
- 3- Hazem is 1.56 m .....
- a) tall                      b) old                      c) long                      d) speed
- 4- I ..... 60 kilograms .
- a) weigh                      b) weight                      c) weighs                      d) weighing

- 5- Noura is the same .....as Fatma .  
 a) **old**                                      b) **age**                                      c) **older**                                      d) **oldest**
- 6- My bag is ..... than your bag .  
 a) **smaller**                                      b) **small**                                      c) **as small**                                      d) **smallest**
- 7- How tall ..... Manal ?  
 a) **does**                                      b) **am**                                      c) **is**                                      d) **are**
- 8- Soha is 14 ..... lighter than me .  
 a) **centimetres**                                      b) **kilograms**                                      c) **metres**                                      d) **kilometres**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- The bus weigh about 6,000 kilograms .                                      2- The first plane weren't very fast .  
 3- She's twenty kilograms light than me .                                      4- This person is two metres long .  
 5- Salma is the younger person in our family .  
 6- Noura is a youngest person in my family .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" Rules for using the internet "

You may use these words: ( **never – only open – check – accurately – parent** )  
 Follow these rules to use the internet safely. ....  
 .....  
 .....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

The Ancient Egyptians built the Great Pyramid at Giza. It's known as the Pyramid of Khufu. It was the tallest building in the world for over 3,800 years.

 **General Test on Unit** **10** 

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

- 1- Where's Burj Khalifa? - In .....  
 a) **Cairo**                                      b) **Dubai**                                      c) **Abu Dhabi**
- 2- How tall is the Burj Khalifa?  
 a) **828**                                      b) **838**                                      c) **848**
- 3- When was it opened ?  
 a) **2011**                                      b) **2010**                                      c) **2009**
- 4- What's the Burj Khalifa? - A .....  
 a) **pyramid**                                      b) **bridge**                                      c) **skyscraper**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Samir** : Which is (1) ..... a ship or a plane ?  
**Hany** : A plane is faster (2) ..... a ship .  
**Samir** : Do you like (3) ..... ?  
**Hany** : No , I don't .  
**Samir** : Why don't you like cars?  
**Hany** : Because they are (4) .....

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) **Mona** : ..... ?  
**Ragaa** : The plane is 63.5 metres long .
- 2) **Haitham** : How heavy were the first mobile phones?  
**Nabil** : .....

**4. Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Follow these rules to use the internet safely. Never give your name or address to people you don't know on the internet, or put photos on websites. Only open emails from people you know. Check information carefully on the internet. Websites don't always give information accurately. If you are not

happy about something on the internet, tell a parent or a teacher immediately. It is not a good idea to spend a long time on a computer. Typing slowly and carefully is better than typing fast and hard .

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Give a suitable title to the passage .
- 2- What should we check on the internet ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- Websites don't always give information .....  
a) **carefully**      b) **slowly**      c) **immediately**      d) **accurately**
- 4- Only give your name or address to people you ..... on the internet.  
a) **know**      b) **don't know**      c) **forget**      d) **follow**
- 5- It is not a good idea to spend a ..... time on a computer.  
a) **long**      b) **tall**      c) **much**      d) **a long**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- How ..... is a camel? - A camel is usually 2.1 m tall.  
a) **high**      b) **old**      c) **tall**      d) **heavy**
- 2- How heavy is a plane? - It's forty thousand .....  
a) **kilometres**      b) **centimetres**      c) **metres**      d) **kilograms**
- 3- How ..... is the Nile? -It's two point eight kilometres wide.  
a) **long**      b) **tall**      c) **wide**      d) **width**
- 4- We allow bags that are smaller than 55 ..... long and 40centimetres wide.  
a) **kilometres**      b) **centimetres**      c) **metres**      d) **kilograms**
- 5- Check information ..... on the internet.  
a) **careful**      b) **carefully**      c) **quiet**      d) **beautifully**
- 6- Only open emails from people you .....  
a) **unknown**      b) **knowing**      c) **know**      d) **don't know**
- 7- Are you ..... to Aswan at 11 o'clock?  
a) **fly**      b) **flew**      c) **flys**      d) **flying**
- 8- ..... long is it? - It's 53 centimetres.  
a) **Who**      b) **How**      c) **What**      d) **When**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Amir is a fast runner. He runs faster .
- 2- Nevine is very quickly at typing. She types quickly.
- 3- The lighthouse shines a light to chips at sea.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" The Eiffel Tower "

You may use these words:

( **opened / 1889 – high / 324 - 8,560,000 kg – visitors – Paris** )

The Eiffel Tower of is an interesting a place to visit. ....

.....

.....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- The Iron Man walked off the cliff and fell down to the ..... !  
a) **sea**      b) **hole**      c) **beach**      d) **cliff**
- 2- What was ..... their tractors, cars and vans? - The Iron Man.  
a) **destroying**      b) **repairing**      c) **shouting**      d) **looking**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What did the farmers cover the hole with?
- 2- Where did the farmers go to look for the Iron Man?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

Burj Khalifa is a very tall skyscraper in Dubai. It is the world's tallest building ever built. Its height is 828 m. It opened in 2010.

# Unit 11 A science lesson درس علوم

## Aims of the unit

- 1- Ask and answer questions using if and when (zero conditional)
- 2- Read instructions for a science experiment
- 3- Listen to instructions for an experiment
- 4- Ask and talk about the sequence of events
- 5- Write a diary
- 6- Learn about famous scientists

## Lessons 1 & 2

vegetables	خضروات	enough	كاف
fruit	فاكهة	jacket	جاكيت - سترة
the bottom of	أسفل .....	half	نصف
liquid	سائل	ice	ثلج
experiment	تجربة	warm	دافئ
air	هواء	screen	شاشة
similar	مشابه - مماثل	dictionary	قاموس
oil	زيت	hot	حار
lighter than	أخف من	outside	الخارج
a can of cola	عبوة من الكولا	ill	مريض
biology	علم الأحياء	sweets	حلوى
chemistry	علم الكيمياء	word	كلمة
physics	علم الفيزياء	a present	هدية
carrot	جزرة	potato	بطاطس
ice cream	ايس كريم	snow	جليد
milk	لبن	wood	خشب
vinegar	خل	bread	خبز
petrol	بتروول	salt	ملح
key	مفتاح	following	التالى
sugar	سكر	sequencing	تسلسل
soft	طرى - لدن	hard	جامد - صعب
boats	قوارب	Which of ?	أى من ؟
shower	حمام - دش	sad	حزين
inside	الداخل	top	أعلى - قمة
peel	قشرة خارجية	someone	شخص

### Regular verbs

add , ed , ed	يجمع - يضيف	float , ed , ed	يطفو
peel , ed , ed	يقشر	remove , d , d	يزيل - يطرد
move , d , d	يحرك	lie on , d , d	يعتمد على
happen , ed , ed	يحدث	watch , ed , ed	يشاهد
touch , ed , ed	يلمس	use , d , d	يستخدم
stay , ed , ed	يبقى - يظل	start , ed , ed	يبدأ
drop , ped , ped	يسقط	snow , ed , ed	تمطر ثلج
accept , ed , ed	يقبل	sequence , ed , ed	يرتب بالتعاقب

### Irregular verbs

sink / sank / sunk	يغوص للأشياء	put / put / put	يضع
feel / felt / felt	يشعر - يحس	say / said / said	يقول
break / broke / broken	يكسر	drink / drank / drunk	يشرب
lose / lost / lost	يفقد - يضيع	understand / understood / understood	يفهم
become / became / become	يصبح	eat / ate / eaten	يأكل

## Language notes

**do experiment :** يؤدي ، يقوم بـ ( تجربة علمية )

- ☞ Mona and I **are doing** a science **experiment** .
- ☞ Where did you **do** the **experiment** ?

📖 **sink (v.) :** فعل بمعنى يغرق للأشياء أو يغوص تحت الماء أو أي سائل آخر.

- ☞ Wood doesn't **sink** in water , it **floats** .
- ☞ An enormous wave hit us and our boat started to **sink** .

📖 **float** فعل بمعنى يطفو إذا تبعه مفعول يأخذ حرف الجر

- The cola without sugar **floats** because sugar adds more weight to the cola.
- If you put an orange into water, it **floats on** the water.

**peel (n)** إسم بمعنى قشرة

- Which one sinks, an orange with or without the **peel**?
- An orange without the **peel** sinks.

**peel (v)** فعل بمعنى يقشر

- If you **peel** the orange and then put it into the water, the orange sinks to the bottom.

**feel + adjective :** يأتي بعد الفعل **feel** بعض الصفات للتعبير عن المشاعر.

- A: What about going to a restaurant ? - B: Ok. I **feel hungry** .
- I **felt afraid** because I had a bad dream . - I **feel ill** , so I want to see a doctor.

📖 **add :** يجمع أو يضيف

- If you **add** five and five , you get ten .
- What happens when you **add** oil to some water?

**ice** ثلج غالباً صناعي ( المتكون داخل الثلاجة )

- If you put **ice** outside the freezer, it melts.

**snow ( n )** إسم بمعنى جليد يتكون طبيعياً بفعل المطر تعامل معاملة المفرد

- There's no **snow** in Egypt. - I want to go skiing on the **snow**.

**snow (v.)** فعل بمعنى تمطر ثلج

- It **snows** in winter in Europe.

**Inside** ( الجزء الداخلي ) بالداخل X **Outside** ( الجزء الخارجي ) بالخارج

- When it's too hot **outside**, we stay **inside** .
- The watermelon is green **outside** and red **inside**.

» **without ( preposition ) + n. اسم / v. + ing :** بدون

- I can't see **without** my glasses . - Cola **without** sugar floats.

## Text SB page 7

Does it float or sink?

**Do this experiment with an orange.**

- Put an orange in some water. What happens?
- If you put an orange into water, it floats on the water.
- Peel the orange and do the experiment again. Now what happens?
- If you peel the orange and then put it into the water, the orange sinks to the bottom.

**This science experiment tells us that the orange peel has air in it. If something has enough air in it, it doesn't sink.**

**Now do a similar experiment with oil. Watch what happens.**

- When you add oil to some water, the oil floats because it is lighter than water.

# Grammar

## Zero conditional

نستخدم قاعدة الشرط الصفريه مع فعلين في زمن المضارع البسيط أحدهما في جملة **if** والأخرى في الجملة الرئيسية عندما تكون النتيجة حقيقية دائماً مثل الحقائق العلمية

(مضارع بسيط. **present simple** + , + **present simple** إذا / عندما **If / When**)

1- لاحظ انه يمكن إستخدام **when** بدلاً من **if**

- **If / When I miss** the 7 o'clock bus, I **am** late for work.

- **If / When I am** late for class, my teacher **gets** angry.

- **If / When you don't heat** ice, it doesn't **melt** . **نفى**

(مضارع بسيط. **present simple** + إذا / عندما **if / when** + مضارع بسيط **present simple**)

- Ice melts if / when you **heat** it.

- Grass **gets** wet if / when it **rains**.

### Yes and No questions

2- في حالة السؤال بهل ؟

- **Does** ice **become** water **if / when** it **gets** warm?

- **Do** oranges sink in water **if / when** you peel them?

3- في حال اذا ما كانت أداة الاستفهام ( فعل مساعد ) في وسط الجملة :

- **If / When** it **gets** warm, **does** ice **become** water?

- **If / When** you peel oranges, **do** they sink in water?

4- في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام **Wh questions** :

- What **do** you **do** if / when **you** get ill?

- Why **does** an orange **sink** if / when **you** peel it?

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1. **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

1- Why does oil float ? - Because oil is ..... than water .

a) taller

b) smaller

c) lighter

2- What do you add oil to ?

a) Water

b) Orange

c) Wood

3- What do you do ?

a) A quiz

b) A survey

c) An experiment

4- What do you use for this experiment ?

a) Wood and oil

b) Oil and water

c) Orange and peel

2. **Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Soha : Manal , what (1)..... if I put this in water ?

Manal : What's it (2)..... of ?

Soha : Paper .

Manal : If it's paper , I think it (3)..... .

Soha : Yes , it's floating . You're right . OK , Manal , Does the box

(4)..... or float ?

Manal : If you put wood in water , it floats .

3. **Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) Heba : What happens when you add oil to some water?

Manar : .....

Heba : Do you enjoy the experiment ?

Manar : Yes, very much.

- 2) **Hatem** : .....?  
**Ahmad** : You get eleven.  
**Hatem** : Do you like maths ?  
**Ahmad** : Yes, but my favourite subject is history.

**4. Read the following , then answer the questions:**

Students at school usually do experiments at the science laboratory. They go there with their teacher of science. **They** write what happens in the experiment carefully. They can learn about shapes, weights, materials and their properties.

Last week we went to the science lab to do an experiment about some shapes. We used a watch to measure time as the shapes sink to the bottom of a tank of water. We found out that some shapes sink faster than other shapes.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why did the students go to the science lab ?  
 2- What did the students use to measure time ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- The underlined word “ **They** ” refers to the .....  
 a) **students**                      b) **teachers**                      c) **laboratory**                      d) **materials**
- 4- In their experiment , the students used a ..... of water .  
 a) **bank**                              b) **bottle**                              c) **tank**                              d) **science**
- 5- Students in the lab write what ..... carefully .  
 a) **happens**                              b) **think**                              c) **sings**                              d) **sinks**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :**

- 1- If you put an orange into water, it floats ..... the water.  
 a) **in**                                      b) **at**                                      c) **by**                                      d) **on**
- 2- I ..... hello when I see my friends.  
 a) **see**                                      b) **say**                                      c) **talk**                                      d) **speak**
- 3- If ice gets warm, it becomes .....  
 a) **snow**                                      b) **water**                                      c) **ice**                                      d) **ice cream**
- 4- What happens when you drop a key into water? - It .....  
 a) **peels**                                      b) **floats**                                      c) **breaks**                                      d) **sinks**
- 5- The cola without sugar floats because sugar ..... more weight to the cola.  
 a) **adds**                                      b) **peels**                                      c) **sinks**                                      d) **floats**
- 6- If something ..... enough air in it, it doesn't sink.  
 a) **have**                                      b) **has**                                      c) **had**                                      d) **hasn't**
- 7- What do you get when ice becomes warm? - .....  
 a) **Water**                                      b) **Milk**                                      c) **Snow**                                      d) **Ice cream**
- 8- I ..... to bed when I'm tired.  
 a) **went**                                      b) **go**                                      c) **goes**                                      d) **going**
- 9- I wear my jacket if ..... cold.  
 a) **is it**                                      b) **it is**                                      c) **it was**                                      d) **was it**
- 10- ..... means to put something with something else  
 a) **Peel**                                      b) **Add**                                      c) **Breaks**                                      d) **Sink**
- 11- What ..... if you put wood in water ?  
 a) **happen**                                      b) **happens**                                      c) **happened**                                      d) **happening**
- 12- Does a piece of paper ..... in water ?  
 a) **sinks**                                      b) **sinking**                                      c) **sink**                                      d) **sank**
- 13- Where can you do ..... experiment ?  
 a) **a**    b) **many**                                      c) **some**                                      d) **an**
- 14- ..... this experiment with an orange.  
 a) **Do**    b) **Does**                                      c) **Did**                                      d) **Doing**



- 15- If you put an orange into water, it ..... on the water.  
 a) **float**                      b) **floats**                      c) **floating**                      d) **floated**
- 16- Which is lighter, oil ..... water?  
 a) **and**                      b) **so**                      c) **or**                      d) **for**
- 17- The orange..... has air in it, so it floats.  
 a) **peels**                      b) **peel**                      c) **peeling**                      d) **peeled**
- 18- I use my dictionary if I don't ..... a word .  
 a) **know**                      b) **knew**                      c) **knows**                      d) **knowing**
- 19- ..... you add two and two, do you get four?  
 a) **But**                      b) **And**                      c) **stayed**                      d) **stay**
- 21- Oil floats because it is ..... than water  
 a) **light**                      b) **staying**                      c) **if**                      d) **Or**
- 20- When it's too hot outside, we .....inside.  
 a) **stays**                      b) **most light**                      c) **lighter**                      d) **lights**
- 22- If it is very hot, Amir goes ..... .  
 a) **swim**                      b) **swimming**                      c) **swam**                      d) **swims**
- 23- If I see my friends in the street, ..... say hello!  
 a) **he**                      b) **she**                      c) **I**                      d) **it**
- 24- If I don't understand an English word, I use the ..... .  
 a) **screen**                      b) **dictionary**                      c) **sweets**                      d) **present**
- 25- When I feel ill, I go to the ..... .  
 a) **baker's**                      b) **supermarket**                      c) **florist's**                      d) **doctor**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- When it's hot, I wear sun cream .
- 2- When it is very hot in England, it snows .
- 3- What do you doing when you get home from school?
- 4- What do you say if someone give you a present?
- 5- Sink means to lie on top of a liquid.
- 6- Put a orange in some water. What happens?
- 7- Float means to move to the bottom of a liquid.
- 8- Don't show my the number .
- 9- Glass thinks if you put it in water .
- 10- If you put would in water , it floats.
- 11- This box is making of wood .
- 12- If you added two and eight , you get ten .
- 13- If you drip glass it breaks
- 14- Some shapes sink fast than other shapes .
- 15- We go to the school library to do experiments .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :** " A science lesson "

You may use these words:( **an orange – paper – peel – wood – oil** )

Here are some facts about some materials.

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

This is an experiment with oil .When you add oil to some water, the oil floats because it is lighter than water.

**Lessons 3 , 4 & Review**

heat	حرارة	colours	ألوان
glass bottle	عبوة زجاجية	blue	أزرق
balloon	بالون	green	أخضر
space	مساحة	yellow	أصفر
half-full	نصف ممتلئة	purple	أرجواني - بنفسجي
spoons	ملاعق	events	أحداث
salty	مالح - مملح	scientist	عالم
heavier than	أثقل من	clocks	منبهات
next	التالي	rice	أرز
now	الآن	soft	طرى
then	ثم	windscreen wipers	مساحات الزجاج
after that	بعد ذلك	New York	نيويورك
finally	فى النهاية - أخيراً	X-ray	اشعة أكس
fire	نار	telephone	تليفون
fire fighter	رجل الإطفاء	oven	فرن
wall	حائط	a part of	جزء من
across	عبر	hair	شعر
electricity	كهرباء	a piece of	قطعة / قصاصة من
ordinal numbers	الأعداد الترتيبية	race	سباق
teapot	براد الشاي	sequencing	التسلسل
move around	يدور حول	over	على - فوق
the rest of	الباقى من	plants	النباتات

**Regular verbs**

heat , ed , ed	يسخن	fill up , ed , ed	يملاً تماماً
need , ed , ed	يحتاج	watch , ed , ed	يشاهد
stir , red , red	يقلب	pour , ed , ed	يصب
push , ed , ed	يدفع	cook , ed , ed	يطهو
melt , ed , ed	يذوب - يسيح	mix , ed , ed	يخلط - يمزج
stop , ped , ped	يوقف - يقف	die , d , d	يموت

**Irregular verbs**

write / wrote / written	يكتب	put in / put / put	يضع فى
stick / stuck / stuck	يلصق	ring / rang / rung	يرن - يدق

**Language functions**

**Asking about the sequence of events**

What do we do first/next/after that?

ماذا تفعل أولاً / ثانياً / بعد ذلك ؟

What happens next/now?

ماذا يحدث الآن ؟

Why does this happen?

لماذا يحدث هذا ؟

**Sequencing events**

First,

أولاً لبدء الحديث فى سياق ترتيبى للأحداث أو عند كتابة موضوع تعبيرى

- To do and experiment with eggs and water, **first** pour some water into a glass.

- Dr Farouk El Baz was born in Zagazig. **First**, he learned about science at school.

Now = then الآن بالنسبة للحقائق وحينئذ للحديث فى الماضى للحديث عن النقطة الثانية فى السياق

- **Now** put an egg into the glass of water. **الآن**
- **Now** Dr El Baz joined Cairo University after leaving school. **حينئذ**

**Next** التالى أو الخطوة اللاحقة .

- **Next**, fill another glass half-ful with water.
- **Next** he turned to study space science in America.

**Then** ثم أو بعد ذلك للخطوة التالية .

- Add four large spoons of salt to the water, **then** stir it.
- **Then** he used satellites to find water under deserts.

**after that**, بعد ذلك

- **After that**, fill the rest of the glass with water.
- **After that**, Dr El Baz found underground water in Sinai and the western desert.

**Finally**, فى النهاية للحديث عن إنتهاء الأحداث

- **Finally**, if you put an egg into the glass of salty water it floats!
- **Finally** he uses this water to grow land in the desert .

Ordinal numbers : الأعداد الترتيبية

1 <sup>st</sup> = the first	الأول	2 <sup>nd</sup> = the second	الثانى
3 <sup>rd</sup> = the third	الثالث	4 <sup>th</sup> = the fourth	الرابع
5 <sup>th</sup> = the fifth	الخامس	6 <sup>th</sup> = the sixth	السادس
7 <sup>th</sup> = the seventh	السابع	8 <sup>th</sup> = the eighth	الثامن
9 <sup>th</sup> = the ninth	التاسع	10 <sup>th</sup> = the tenth	العاشر

الأرقام من 21 ..... etc. twenty first – twenty second – twenty third  
 تكتب الأرقام من 21 – 30 21<sup>st</sup> – 22<sup>nd</sup> – 23<sup>rd</sup> – 24<sup>th</sup> – 25<sup>th</sup> – 26<sup>th</sup> – 27<sup>th</sup> – 28<sup>th</sup> – 29<sup>th</sup> – 30<sup>th</sup>

لاحظ ... استخدام أداة التعريف **the** قبل الأعداد الترتيبية **عدا** الأفعال come / turn / go

My house is the **twentieth** ( 20<sup>th</sup> ) house in the street.

- I came **second** in the race.
- Today is May 24<sup>th</sup> .

**Although we don't usually write the with dates, we do say it**

لاحظ : بالرغم من أننا لا نكتب أداة المعرفة **the** مع التواريخ إلا أننا نستخدمها عند الكلام. ويكتب التاريخ بطريقتين

- May (the) 24<sup>th</sup> 2015. ( الطريقة الأمريكية ) شهر / يوم / سنة
- (The ) 24<sup>th</sup> of May 2015. ( الطريقة البريطانية ) يوم / شهر / سنة

### Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

- Why did Hazem go to bed early? - Because he was .....  
 a) **running**                      b) **tired**                      c) **hungry**
- When did Hazem go running? - On .....  
 a) **Monday**                      b) **Sunday**                      c) **Friday**
- Where was he before going running ?  
 a) **At home**                      b) **At work**                      c) **At a restaurant**
- What did he do after work ? - He .....  
 a) **went to bed**                      b) **had dinner**                      c) **went running**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Mother : Do you want to make a cup of tea?  
 Leila : OK. (1) ..... do I do first?  
 Mother : First, put some water in a (2) .....  
 Leila : What do I do (3) .....?  
 Mother : (4) ..... the water and the tea and wait a few minutes.  
 After that, take the teapot off the heat.  
 Leila : Oh! It's very easy.

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) Laila : When you move the balloon across your hair, you get electricity.  
**Faten** : ..... ?  
 Laila : Yes, that's right.
- 2) **Hassan** : Who invented the windscreen wipers?  
 Hani : .....  
**Hassan** : When did she invent them ?  
 Hani : In 1903.

**4. Read the following , then answer the questions:**

Wilhelm Conrad Rontgen was born in Remscheid, Germany on 27<sup>th</sup> March, 1845. He studied mechanical engineering in Zurich in Switzerland. After that he studied physics. In 1895 while he was working in a dark room, an electric ray was passing through a tube with black paper around it, he saw all that was inside the tube. Then he called it X-ray. It is one of the greatest discoveries in the field of medicine. In 1901 he won the Nobel Prize for physics. Finally, he died on 10 February 1923 aged 77.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Where was Rontgen born ?  
 2- When did he win The Nobel Prize ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- Wilhelm Conrad Rontgen was .....  
 a) **Egyptian**      b) **German**      c) **American**      d) **Arabic**
- 4- He won the Nobel Prize in .....  
 a) **Arts**      b) **physics**      c) **biology**      d) **chemistry**
- 5- He named his invention ..... - ray.  
 a) **X**      b) **Y**      c) **Z**      d) **B**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c , or d :**

- 1- My brother's birthday is on ..... of August .  
 a) **23<sup>st</sup>**      b) **23**      c) **23<sup>rd</sup>**      d) **23<sup>nd</sup>**
- 2- If parents speak different languages to their children, they don't .....  
 a) **peel**      b) **become**      c) **fill**      d) **understand**
- 3- Tim Berners Lee invented the ..... in 1989.  
 a) **X-rays**      b) **internet**      c) **telephone**      d) **oven**
- 4- My mother always ..... a bottle with cold water for me to take to school.  
 a) **filling**      b) **fill**      c) **fills**      d) **filled**
- 5- If you ..... an apple, it becomes brown.  
 a) **heat**      b) **put**      c) **peel**      d) **pour**
- 6- Nada always writes and sends ..... at night.  
 a) **colours**      b) **events**      c) **e-mails**      d) **X- rays**
- 7- ..... is Egyptian .  
 a) **Tim Berners Lee**      b) **Graham Bell**      c) **Mary Anderson**      d) **Dr Farouk El-Baz**
- 8- December is the ..... month in the year.  
 a) **twelve**      b) **twelve's**      c) **twelfth**      d) **twelfths**
- 9- ..... , pour some water into a glass .  
 a) **twelve**      b) **twelve's**      c) **twelfth**      d) **twelfths**
- 10- Graham Bell is most famous for his ..... of the telephone.  
 a) **invent**      b) **invention**      c) **invented**      d) **inventing**
- 11- If it is eleven o'clock in Egypt, it is six o'clock ..... New York.  
 a) **by**      b) **at**      c) **on**      d) **in**
- 12- If you put sugar into coffee, you need to ..... the coffee.  
 a) **stirs**      b) **stirred**      c) **stirring**      d) **stir**
- 13- When ice becomes warm, the ice .....  
 a) **melt**      b) **melts**      c) **melting**      d) **melted**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Nick finished the race in first place! Nick's sister was ten .
- 2- Alexander Graham Bell invented the internet .
- 3- Wilhelm Conrad Rontgen invention the X-ray in 1895.
- 4- Dr Farouk El-Baz was born on Zagazig.
- 5- If you put ice in the sun, it melt.      6- There are fifth people in my family.
- 7- Once, put an egg into the glass of water.
- 8- Two, fill another glass half-full with water.
- 9 - I was born at 1971 .      10- I write down things that happen to me in a dairy.
- 11- The numbers from 50 to 59 are called fifty.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :      " Dr Farouk El-Baz "**

You may use these words: ( **born – first – then – after that – finally** )  
 Dr Farouk El-Baz is an Egyptian scientist.

.....  
 .....  
 .....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

On Monday Hazem went running after work. Then he had dinner at a restaurant . Finally he went to bed early because he was tired.

 **General Test on Unit** 11 

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

- 1- When was Dr El-Baz born ?      a) 1893      b) 1938      c) 1983
- 2- When did he first learn about his field ?  
     a) **At school**      b) **At a university**      c) **In the USA**
- 3- What country did Dr El-Baz go to ?      a) **England**      b) **America**      c) **Germany**
- 4- What did he learn about ?      a) **History**      b) **Languages**      c) **science**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Hazem : For this experiment, we have a balloon. What do we do (1) .....?  
**Ashraf** : First, fill the balloon with air.  
 Hazem : OK, the balloon has air in it now. What do we do (2) .....?  
**Ashraf** : Next, move the balloon (3) ..... your hair.  
 Hazem : What's the final part of the experiment?  
**Ashraf** : (4) ....., put the balloon on a wall. What happens?  
 Hazem : The balloon stays on the wall!

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1)      Amr                    : ..... ?  
        Dina                   : Naguib Mahfouz is the first Egyptian to win the Nobel prize .
- 2)      Aya                     : When was Roentgen born ?  
        Noha                    : ..... 1845 .

**4. Read the following , then answer the questions:**

Mary Anderson was born in 1866. She was American. She was visiting New York City by car. She found that street car drivers had to open the windows of their cars when it rained to see. Also it was hard for her to see the buildings and the streets through windscreen. First, she decided to solve this problem, Anderson invented a swinging arm device with a rubber blade in 1903. Then in 1917 she invented the automatic windscreen wipers. She died in 1953.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why did she try to solve the problem ?
- 2- When did she invent the automatic windscreen?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- Mary Anderson was born in .....  
a) 1917      b) 1903      c) 1866      d) 1953
- 4- Mary Anderson invented the first windscreen wipers in .....  
a) 1953      b) 1866      c) 1903      d) 1917
- 5- Mary Anderson lived about ..... years.  
a) 65      b) 90      c) 78      d) 87

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- If students work hard, they always .....  
a) **succeeds**      b) **succeed**      c) **will succeed**      d) **succeeded**
- 2- Finally, you can ..... the tea into the glass.  
a) **pour**      b) **stir**      c) **heat**      d) **add**
- 3- If the teacher ....., we always listen.  
a) **talk**      b) **talks**      c) **talking**      d) **talked**
- 4- I want to ..... a cup of coffee.  
a) **sink**      b) **cook**      c) **do**      d) **make**
- 5- When you don't cut your hair, it becomes .....  
a) **high**      b) **long**      c) **short**      d) **tall**
- 6- ..... is to remove the outside of a fruit or vegetable  
a) **Add**      b) **Sink**      c) **Peel**      d) **Float**
- 7- What do you do ..... you are hot? - I drink cold water.  
a) **which**      b) **what**      c) **where**      d) **when**
- 8- The grass gets wet if ..... rains.  
a) **they**      b) **it**      c) **its**      d) **it's**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Nick finished the race in first place! Nick's sister was ten .
- 2- Wilhelm Conrad Rontgen invention the X-ray in 1895.
- 3- Ahmad is making a science experiment .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " How to make a cup of tea! "**

You may use these words: ( first – second – then – after that – finally )

Making tea is easy .  
.....  
.....  
.....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- Hogarth's father drove away as ..... as he could when he saw the Iron Man.  
a) **deep**      b) **fast**      c) **slow**      d) **big**
- 2- Where did the birds find the body of the Iron Man?  
a) **In the sea**      b) **On the beach**      c) **In the river**      d) **In the cliff**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- 1- How did the farmers make a trap for the Iron Man ?
- 2- Who found the Iron Man's body on the sea ?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

Dr El-Baz was born in 1938. First, he learned about science at school. Then he went to Ain Shams University. After that, he studied in the USA.

# Unit 12 Transport of the future

## النقل في المستقبل

### Aims of the unit

- 1- Use will and won't for future predictions .
- 2- Talk about ability and possibility.
- 3- Read about transport .
- 4- Write predictions about the future.
- 5- Ask and answer questions that express certainty/uncertainty.

### Lessons 1 & 2

forms	أشكال - أنواع	in the future	في المستقبل
transport	المواصلات	China	الصين
electric	كهربى	Mach	ماخ ( وحدة قياس بسرعة الصوت )
electricity	كهرباء	speed of sound	سرعة الصوت
environment	البيئة	France	فرنسا
petrol	بنزين	long ago	منذ عهد بعيد
technology	تكنولوجيا	hundred	مائة
instead of	بدلاً من	in the past	في الماضى
over time	بمرور الوقت	energy	الطاقة
boat	قارب	windy	عاصف
horse	حصان	expensive	غالى الثمن
camel	جمل	desert	الصحراء
bicycle	دراجة	car	سيارة
trains	قطارات	better for	أفضل لـ
plane	طائرة	engineers	مهندسين
traffic	المرور	America	أمريكا
metro lines	خطوط المترو	a kind of	نوع من
able to	قادر على	in less than	في أقل من
pollution	التلوث	examples	أمثلة
later	فيما بعد	warm	دافىء
England	إنجلترا	November	شهر نوفمبر
sunny	شمس	football team	فريق كرة القدم
player	لاعب	most of	معظم - أغلب
plan (n)	خطة	bad for	سئء - مضر لـ

### Regular verbs

plan ,ed , ed	يخطط	turn off ,ed , ed	يطفىء
change , d , d	يغير - يتغير	travel ,led , led	يرحل
walk ,ed , ed	يمشى	help ,ed , ed	يساعد
learn ,ed , ed / t	يتعلم	count ,ed , ed	يعد
move , d , d	يحرك - يتحرك	miss ,ed , ed	يفتقد - يفقد

### Irregular verbs

can / could / ....	يستطيع - يقدر	drive / drove / driven	يقود - يسوق
build / built / built	يبنى - يشيد	buy / bought / bought	يشترى
fly / flew / flown	يطير	swim / swam / swum	يعوم
speak /spoke / spoken	يتحدث	teach / taught / taught	يُعلم
leave / left / left	يغادر - يرحل	take / took / taken	يأخذ

## Text SB page 12

## How we travel

How people travel changes over time. **Long ago**, people **could** only walk or travel on **boats**, **horses** or **camels**. Then people invented **bicycles** and later **trains**, **cars** and **planes**. But **we couldn't** move around the world **as quickly as** we can today. How will **technology** help us to travel **in the future**? In the future, we will have small **electric** cars. They will be easy to **drive** in **traffic**. These cars **won't** use petrol. They **will** use **electricity**, so they will be **better for the environment**. Now, a lot of cities have too many cars. These cities **will build** more metro lines so people **will be able to** get around the cities **quickly**. Today, you can go from Cairo to Alexandria by train **in less than three hours**. In the future, trains will be able to go even faster. The fastest train in the world is in **China**. It can travel at **430 km/h**. Engineers in America **are planning** a new kind of train. This will **be able to** travel at more than 1,000 km/h!

## Language notes

electric	كهربى
- Mother cooks using an <b>electric</b> oven .	
electricity	كهرباء
- The <b>electricity</b> will be cut off if you do not pay your bill .	
petrol	بنزين
- Cars use <b>petrol</b> to work .	
in less than	فى اقل من
- I live <b>in less than</b> a kilometre from here .	
at more than	اكثر من
- This train will be able to travel <b>at more than</b> 1,000 km/h!	
it takes	يستغرق
- <b>It takes me</b> an hour to do the English homework .	
instead of	بدلاً من
- What will electric cars use <b>instead of</b> petrol?	
long ago	منذ زمن بعيد تدل على الماضى
The ancient Egyptians built the pyramids <b>long ago</b> .	
in the past	فى الماضى
- <b>In the past</b> , people used a water clock to see what time it was.	
plan (n)	خطة
- Her <b>plan</b> is to finish school and then travel .	
plan (v)	يخطط
- We <b>planned</b> to go to the cinema after work .	

## Grammar

The use of " will " :

للتعبير عن أفعال ستحدث فى المستقبل نستخدم : **will + inf.** مصدر....  
ومع المستقبل البسيط نستخدم بعض الكلمات والعبارات مثل :

[ فى خلال **in ..... time** - التالى ، القادم **next** - غدا **tomorrow** ]

☞ **We'll leave** the hotel **in 15 minutes' time** .

لاحظ ... استخدام التعبير **in ... time** بمعنى ( فى خلال ... ) مع المستقبل .

☞ **In ten minutes** , Soha **will arrive** home .



**will ( for prediction about the future ) :**

تستخدم **will** في الإثبات ، أو **won't** في النفي للتنبؤ في المستقبل بدون دليل .

**..... will / won't + inf. مصدر .....**

- ☞ One day , people **will travel** to Mars . كوكب المريخ
- ☞ People **will live** on the moon in the future .
- ☞ My father **won't buy** a new car this year .
- ☞ I think lots of people **will live** in big cities in 50 years .
- ☞ In 50 years I think people **may live** in very tall buildings .

**Ability in the present : القدرة في المضارع**

**can + inf. مصدر (present)**

I **can speak** English well .

**Ability in the past : القدرة في الماضي**

للتعبير عن القدرة أو الاستطاعة في الماضي يمكننا استخدام :

**..... could + inf. مصدر .....**

**.... was / were + able to + inf. مصدر ....**

- ☞ She **could touch** things . ☞ She **couldn't touch** things .
- ☞ **Could she touch** things ? ☞ **No , she couldn't .** ( نفى )
- ☞ **Yes , she could .** ( إثبات ) ☞ **I wasn't able to type .**
- ☞ I **was able to type** . ☞ **I wasn't able to type .**
- ☞ **Were you able to type** ? ☞ **No , I wasn't .** ( نفى )
- ☞ **Yes , I was .** ( إثبات ) ☞ **When she was five , she could speak 2 languages .**
- ☞ Last month she **was able to cross** the river . استطاعة في موقف معين .

**Ability in the future : القدرة في المستقبل**

للتعبير عن القدرة أو الاستطاعة في المستقبل يمكننا أن نستخدم :

**.... will + be able to + inf. مصدر .....**

- Will you **be able to** come tonight ?
- People will **be able to** get around the cities quickly.
- ☞ In the future , we **will be able to find** new medicines .
- ☞ Next year , my father **will be able to buy** a new car .
- ☞ Say : **will be able to drive** ☞ Don't say : **will can to drive**

**as + adj. + as**

تستخدم لوصف تساوي اثنين في صفة

Amr is **as tall as** Amed .

In the past ,we couldn't move around the world **as quickly as** we can today.

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

- 1- When did people travel on horses and camels? - In the ..... .  
a) **past**                                      b) **future**                                      c) **present**
- 2- What forms of transport did people use to cross the river ?  
a) **horses**                                      b) **camels**                                      c) **boats**
- 3- What will cars use in the future ?  
a) **electric**                                      b) **electricity**                                      c) **petrol**
- 4- What do cars use in the present ?  
a) **electricity**                                      b) **petrol**                                      c) **technology**

**3. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Coach : Are you the new (1)..... in the team?  
 Player : Yes, I'm the new player in the team.  
 Coach : (2)..... you use your left leg well ?  
 Player : No, I'm training to make it (3).....  
 Coach : (4)..... you score a hat-trick before ?  
 Player : Yes, I could.

**4. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) Heba : Can you ride a horse ?  
 Noura : .....  
 Heba : Ask your father to train you .  
 2) Tamer : ..... ?  
 Ahmed : At the age of three .  
 Tamer : Me too , but I couldn't peel an orange.

**5. Read the following , then answer the questions:**

In the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity, so they will be better for the environment. Now, a lot of cities have too many cars. These cities will build more metro lines so people will be able to get around the cities quickly. The fastest train in the world is in China. It can travel at 430 km/h. Engineers in America are planning a new kind of train. This will be able to travel at more than 1,000 km/h!

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What will the cars use in the future?  
 2- What are the engineers in America planning for ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- The fastest train in the world is in .....  
 a) America      b) China      c) Egypt      d) France  
 4- Cars now use ..... for energy .  
 a) water      b) lines      c) electricity      d) petrol  
 5- Some cities will build more ..... lines because they have many cars.  
 a) metro      b) car      c) petrol      d) electricity

**6. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :**

- 1- What could Adam ..... when he was little?  
 a) does      b) do      c) doing      d) did  
 2- ..... you make me a cup of tea ?  
 a) Are      b) Will      c) Were      d) Have  
 3- We will be ..... to visit Mars .  
 a) enable      b) can      c) ability      d) able  
 4- When I was little, I ..... peel an orange .  
 a) can      b) couldn't      c) count      d) can't  
 5- What ..... you be able to do when you were 10 that you can do now?  
 a) can't      b) couldn't      c) don't      d) won't  
 6- We should look ..... the environment because we all live in it.  
 a) before      b) after      c) at      d) for  
 7- Mobile phones and tablet computers are examples of new .....  
 a) electricity      b) technology      c) environment      d) petrol  
 8- The ..... can't go out to sea today because it is too windy.  
 a) cars      b) camels      c) horses      d) boats  
 9- ..... we all use computers at school in the future?  
 a) Will      b) Do      c) Could      d) Did

- 10- What ..... you do now that you will be able to do when you are 30?  
 a) **can**                                      b) **couldn't**                                      c) **could**                                      d) **can't**
- 11- When she was 9 month , she ..... walk .  
 a) **can**    b) **able**    c) **can't**    d) **could**
- 12- When I ..... young , I couldn't swim .  
 a) **were**    b) **am**    c) **was**    d) **is**
- 13- In the future , we ..... to build better hospitals .  
 a) **could**    b) **couldn't**    c) **will be able**    d) **be able**
- 14- ..... you speak three languages ?  
 a) **Am**    b) **Are**    c) **Does**    d) **Can**
- 15- He was able to ..... at the university last year.  
 a) **been**    b) **be**    c) **did**    d) **was**
- 16- I ..... be able to type more easily .  
 a) **can**    b) **will**    c) **could**    d) **was**
- 17- What will the ..... be like this evening? - Cold.  
 a) **electricity**    b) **technology**    c) **weather**    d) **transport**
- 18- ..... is bad for the environment .  
 a) **Technology**    b) **Pollution**    c) **Water**    d) **Electricity**
- 19- Ali will be late for school because he ..... the bus.  
 a) **counted**    b) **planned**    c) **sleep**    d) **missed**
- 20- New ..... can help people get better in hospitals.  
 a) **electricity**    b) **technology**    c) **petrol**    d) **transport**

**7. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Most cars and buses use electricity which we make from oil.  
 2- It takes just less then three hours to go to Alexandria.  
 3- We couldn't move around the world as quickly as we could today.  
 4- In the future, we had small electric cars.  
 5- These cars want use petrol.  
 6- This train will be able to travel at more than 1,000 cm/h .  
 7- Do we all be able to use computers at school in the future?  
 8- "Can you swim when you were three years old?"  
 9- When I was younger, I could walk, but I couldn't swam .  
 10- Can you stand on one leg to 30 seconds ?  
 11- In the future , we could be able to eat special food .  
 12- Khalid's ill today, so he want be able to play football.  
 13- We will can to live in glass houses under the sea .  
 14- "Do you think that cars well fly one day?"

**8. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" How we travel "

You may use these words:

(long ago - then / invented - later / train - today / plane - in the future / electric)

How people travel changes over time.

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

- Ahmad : What forms of transport did people use before there were cars?  
 Hala : They walked or travelled on boats, horses or camels.  
 Ahmad : What will electric cars use instead of petrol?  
 Hala : They will use electricity.

## Lessons 3 , 4 &amp; Review

underground cities	مدن تحت الأرض	easier	أسهل
skyscrapers	ناطحات سحاب	perhaps	ربما
university	جامعة	sure	متأكد
dark	مظلم	winter	الشتاء
text message	رسالة نصية	invention	إختراع
more than	أكثر من	passenger	مسافر
colder	أبرد	until	حتى
skiing	التزلج على الجليد	soon	قريباً
a hundred percent	مائة بالمائة	delicious	لذيذ الطعم
impossible	مستحيل	Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
certain	مؤكد	housework (sing.)	الأعمال المنزلية
definitely	قطعاً - بلا ريب	World Cup	كأس العالم
full	ملىء	tourists	سائحين
higher and higher	أعلى وأعلى	dishes	أطباق عميقة
ferry	معدية - عبارة	such as	مثل
billion	بليون	quicker	أسرع
dollars	دولارات	cheaper	أرخص
business	عمل تجارى	flying	الطيران
railway system	نظام سكك حديدية	main	أساسي
Kafr El Zayat	كفر الزيات	one day	ذات يوم
journey	رحلة	drivers	سائقين
coach	حافلة	late for	متأخر على
airport	مطار	using .....	باستخدام .....
clothes	ملابس	letters	حروف - خطابات
fun	متعة	also	أيضاً
project	مشروع	ship	سفينة
easily	بسهولة	before	قبل
space	فضاء	travelling	السفر

## Regular verbs

live , d , d	يعيش	need , ed , ed	يحتاج
contain , ed , ed	يحتوى	agree , d , d	يوافق
disagree , d , d	يعارض	happen , ed , ed	يحدث
predict , ed , ed	يتنبأ	travel , led , led	يسافر
rain , ed , ed	تمطر	visit , ed , ed	يزور
book , ed , ed	يحجز ( تذكرة )	use , d , d	يستعمل

## Irregular verbs

read / read / read	يقرأ	send / sent / sent	يرسل
think/ thought / thought	يعتقد - يفكر	build / built / built	يبني
bring / brought / brought	يحضر	drive / drove / driven	يقود
fly / flew / flown	يطير	take / took / taken	يأخذ - يستغرق

## Text SB page 2

## Transport in Egypt

**Egypt is a large country, so transport is very important.**

- People in Egypt used boats and ferries thousands of years ago. You can still travel by ferry or boat today on more than 3,000 km of rivers and canals.
- The Suez Canal is one of the world's most famous canals. In 2015, the canal became 72 kilometres longer. After a project that took just one year, many more ships can now use the Suez Canal. The ships will bring about \$13 billion dollars of business into Egypt by 2023.
- Egypt was the first country in Africa to have a railway system. Its first railway line, from Alexandria to Kafr El Zayat, opened in 1854. Today, Egypt's railway system is more than 7,000 km long.
- In 1904, Prince Aziz Hassan drove one of the first cars in Egypt, from Cairo to Alexandria. It took ten hours! Today, the journey takes less than three hours. Egypt now has more than 21,000 km of roads. Many people travel by coach.
- Cairo International Airport opened in 1963. Today, planes fly to more than 25 airports around the country.

## Language notes

book ( v. )

يحجز ( تذكرة )

- I **booked** a ticket before I travelled by train.

a book (n.)

كتاب

- I read **a book** about the history of travel.

ship

سفينة

- People travel from Egypt to Italy by **ship**.

boat

قارب ( صغير )

- Fishermen catch fish using **boats**.

ferry

( عبارة - معدية )

- People take the **ferry** to go from one side to the other side of the river.

get colder X get hotter

تزداد برودة X تزداد حرارة

- In winter it **gets colder** , but in summer it **gets hotter**.

housework

أعمال المنزل ( تنظيف - ترتيب - طبخ ..... إلخ )

- Manal always helps her mother with the **housework**.

homework

الواجب المدرسى

- I always do my English **homework** in the evening.

by + year

قبل حلول عام .....

- The ships will bring about \$13 billion dollars of business into Egypt **by 2023**.

## Writing skills

عزيزى الطالب ..... هناك بعض الطرق لذكر الأمثلة كما يلي :

like

مثل ( للتشبيه )

- On some trains, **like** the fast trains from Cairo to Alexandria, you can book your ticket before you travel.- Can you buy me some fruit **like** apples or watermelon?

فى المثال السابق يريد المتحدث شراء فاكهة تشبه التفاح أو البطيخ ولا يريد شراء التفاح أو البطيخ تحديداً.

such as

مثل ( ويفضل أن تكون في وسط الجملة )

- Fast coaches travel to the main cities, **such as** Cairo, Aswan and Alexandria.
- Children should avoid eating junk food **such as** burgers and chips.

for example

على سبيل المثال ( ويفضل أن تكون كبدائية جملة )

- There are many ways to travel in Egypt. **For example**, by bus, train or boat.
- Children should eat less junk food. **For example**, they should avoid eating burgers and chips.

## Language functions

Expressing certainty/uncertainty

التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد

I'm ( not ) a hundred percent sure.

أنا متأكد / لست متأكد بنسبة مائة بالمائة

I'm **a hundred percent sure** that the sun rises in the east.

I'm **not a hundred percent sure** that every student will go to university.

definitely

تعبر عن التأكد من حدوث شيء ( ولكن بنسبة أقل )

- Salma : I don't think people will live in skyscrapers.
- Dina : I disagree. That will **definitely** happen, because cities are full now.
- It will **definitely** be hot in the next summer.
- In the news, they said it will **definitely** rain tomorrow.

I'm (not) certain/sure

متأكد / غير متأكد من حدوث شيء

I'm **sure** we will have very small computers in our clothes.

= I'm **certain** we will have very small computers in our clothes.

- I'm **not sure** . I think the weather will get hotter.

= I'm **not certain** . I think the weather will get hotter.

I think/don't think that

أنا أعتقد / لا أعتقد في حدوث شيء

A: Do you **think** more or fewer people will travel by coach in the future?

B: I **think** more people will travel by coach in the future.

C: I **don't think** more people will travel by coach.

Perhaps (we will/won't be able to ...)

ربما سيحدث / لا يحدث

A: Do you predict that we'll all be able to see in the dark?

B: **Perhaps** we will. It will be fun!

C: **Perhaps** we won't be able to see in the dark.

That's impossible.

هذا مستحيل

A: This magazine says that we'll be able to go skiing in Egypt in the future.

B: **That's impossible**. It will never be cold enough for skiing.!

### Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :

1- How many hours does the journey take today ?

a) 10

b) 3

c) 7

2- How many hours did the journey take in 1904 ?

a) 7

b) 3

c) 10

3- What did Prince Aziz Hassan do in 1904 ? - He ..... the first car in Egypt.

a) **invented**

b) **drove**

c) **built**

4- What was the journey from and to ? - It was from .....

a) **Cairo to Alexandria** .

b) **Alexandria to Cairo**.

c) **Alexandria to Kafr El Zayat** .

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Hana : This magazine says that we'll be able to go (1) ..... in Egypt in the future.

Nour : That's (2) ..... ! It will never be cold enough for skiing.

Hana : But the weather is changing. Do you think Egypt will have snow in the future?

Nour : That will (3) ..... not happen.

Hana : My English friend says that England has a lot more rain in the winter now. Perhaps we will have more rain, too.

Nour : I'm not (4) ..... . I think the weather will get hotter.

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) Amir : ..... ?

Ragy: I'm a hundred percent sure that today is hotter than yesterday!

Amir : OK. Let's go to the beach.

2) Noha: Why do you think travel will be easier or in the future?

Hoda: .....

Noha: Why do you think travel will be more expensive in the future?

Hoda: Because there won't be enough petrol.

**4. Read the following , then answer the questions:**

Today we can easily travel around the world using a lot of different forms of transport. But before planes, cars and trains, this was not easy. People could travel to other countries on boats because these are some of the oldest forms of transport. But people couldn't use a train until its invention in 1831, or drive a car until 1879, or fly in a passenger plane until 1914. Most people still can't travel to space, but perhaps soon we will be able to do this!

**A) Answer the following questions :**

1- How can we travel around the world easily?

2- How could people travel to other countries before?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

3- The invention of the train was in .....

- a) 1879                      b) 1831                      c) 1914                      d) 1789

3- People can't drive cars until .....

- a) 1831                      b) 1879                      c) 1902                      d) 1914

4- People can't fly in a passenger ..... until 1914 .

- a) car                      b) space                      c) train                      d) plane

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1- Do you think planes will ..... larger or smaller in the future?

- a) am                      b) is                      c) are                      d) be

2- Today, the journey ..... less than three hours.

- a) makes                      b) took                      c) go                      d) takes

3- The railway system is more than 7,000 ..... long.

- a) km                      b) kg                      c) mm                      d) cm

4- Today, Egypt's railway ..... is more than 7,000 km long.

- a) way                      b) road                      c) canal                      d) system

5- Do you ..... we will have underground cities?

- a) sure                      b) possible                      c) think                      d) perhaps

6- Computers ..... be our teachers.

- a) were                      b) wants                      c) won't                      d) want

7- The bus is here, so we won't be late ..... school.

- a) to                      b) on                      c) by                      d) for

8- Do you think cars will be able to ..... in the future?

- a) flew                      b) flying                      c) flies                      d) fly

- 9- It ..... rain a lot last winter in Upper Egypt.  
 a) **did not**                      b) **not did**                      c) **did no**                      d) **don't**
- 10- Last winter, we ..... some beautiful rainbows.  
 a) **will see**                      b) **sees**                      c) **saw**                      d) **see**
- 11- Where ..... spend your next holiday?  
 a) **are you**                      b) **did you**                      c) **will you**                      d) **you will**
- 12- He came in, ..... off his coat and sat down.  
 a) **took**                      b) **will take**                      c) **taking**                      d) **takes**
- 13- When I was having breakfast, the phone suddenly .....  
 a) **ring**                      b) **will ring**                      c) **rang**                      d) **rings**
- 14- Last year, I ..... to England on holiday.  
 a) **go**                      b) **goes**                      c) **going**                      d) **went**
- 15- The weather ..... hot yesterday.  
 a) **be**                      b) **am**                      c) **is**                      d) **was**
- 16- I ..... lots of interesting places last summer.  
 a) **visit**                      b) **visiting**                      c) **visited**                      d) **visits**
- 17- I'm not a hundred ..... that every student will go to university.  
 a) **percent sure**                      b) **definitely**                      c) **certain**                      d) **sure**
- 18- Go to the ticket office and ..... a ticket.  
 a) **build**                      b) **drive**                      c) **book**                      d) **send**
- 19- Egypt now has more than 21,000 ..... of roads.  
 a) **kg**                      b) **km/h**                      c) **km**                      d) **cm**
- 20- In the future, I ..... that trains won't have drivers.  
 a) **possible**                      b) **think**                      c) **certain**                      d) **sure**
- 21- Do you ..... that we'll only read on computers in the future?  
 a) **read**                      b) **think**                      c) **happen**                      d) **need**
- 22- No, that ..... won't happen.  
 a) **impossible**                      b) **certain**                      c) **perhaps**                      d) **definitely**
- 23- Do you think more or fewer people will travel by ..... in the future?  
 a) **canal**                      b) **coach**                      c) **road**                      d) **airport**
- 24- People in Egypt used boats and ..... thousands of years ago.  
 a) **coaches**                      b) **planes**                      c) **ferries**                      d) **trains**
- 25- The ships will ..... about \$13 billion dollars of business into Egypt by 2023.  
 a) **predict**                      b) **bring**                      c) **take**                      d) **agree**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Many forms of transport use rivers, for example, buses, coaches and cars.  
 2- Travelling with boat is usually slow.                      3- It is be more expensive .  
 4- I will send you the information when I got it.  
 5- I will translated the email.  
 6- I will made some sandwiches in ten minutes.  
 7- He will probably come back yesterday.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

**" Future of transport "**

You may use these words:

( **become faster – become cheaper – more expensive – new forms – to space** )

I can predict about the future of transport . .....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

In 1904, Prince Aziz Hassan drove one of the first cars in Egypt, from Cairo to Alexandria. It took ten hours! Today, the journey takes less than three hours.



1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1- What was the plane height?

a) 6 m

b) 3 m

c) 40 m

2- How fast was the first plane?

a) 14 km/h

b) 40 km/h

c) 400 km/h

3- How heavy was the plane?

a) 205 kg

b) 520 kg

c) 250 kg

4- When did it fly? - .....years ago.

a) 213

b) 113

c) 100

2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

Randa : (1)..... you think that plane travel will become quicker?

Sara : I'm sure that flying will become quicker.

Randa : Do you think that plane travel will become (2).....?

Sara : I'm not a hundred (3).....sure. Petrol is always expensive.

Randa : I think that we'll have airports in every city .

Sara : That's (4)..... .It will be too expensive to do that.

3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1) Hoda : ..... ?

Rasha : I think people will live in skyscrapers.

Hoda : Why do you think so ?

Rasha : Because there will be more people.

2) Ahmad : How long does it take from Cairo to Alexandria on the fastest trains?

Samy : It takes just less than three hours.

Ahmad : How will trains change in the future?

Samy : .....

4. Read the following , then answer the questions:

Do you think travel will be easier or more difficult in the future? Some people think it will be easier because technology will make it faster and easier. Other people think it will be more difficult because there will be more people and there will be less space on trains and buses. Some people think prices will be more expensive because there won't be enough petrol. Others think it will be less expensive because we won't need petrol. Transport will use other forms of energy.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- Do you think travel will be easier or more difficult in the future? Why?

2- Do you think travel will be more expensive or less expensive in the future? Why?

B) Choose the correct answer :

3- The underlined pronoun it refers to .....

a) space

b) petrol

c) technology

d) travel

4- People think there won't be enough ..... in the future

- a) **people**      b) **petrol**      c) **water**      d) **electricity**

5- I think ..... will make travelling easier and faster.

- a) **buses**      b) **electricity**      c) **technology**      d) **petrol**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1- Do you think we ..... go by train to more or fewer cities in the future?

- a) **will be**      b) **will be able to**      c) **will be able**      d) **able to**

2- What will the weather be ..... this evening?

- a) **love**      b) **likes**      c) **like**      d) **liked**

3- We couldn't move around the world as quickly as we ..... today.

- a) **couldn't**      b) **can**      c) **could**      d) **can't**

4- When I was 4 I could walk, but I ..... swim.

- a) **can**      b) **couldn't**      c) **could**      d) **can't**

5- We should turn off ..... lights when we leave our room.

- a) **electricity**      b) **electric**      c) **electrical**      d) **elect**

6- Modern ..... helps us to live comfortably.

- a) **bicycle**      b) **petrol**      c) **technology**      d) **planes**

7- My father drives me to school in his .....

- a) **plane**      b) **car**      c) **train**      d) **coach**

8- Cars, buses and coaches use .....

- a) **water**      b) **electricity**      c) **oil**      d) **petrol**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1- The boats can't go out to sea today because it is too wind.

2- Electric will be better for the environment.

3- Coaches and buses are used to carrying passengers from place to place.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " New Suez Canal "**

You may use these words: ( **2015 – 72 km longer – one year – more ships – 2023** )

The Suez Canal is one of the world's most famous canals.

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1- When the farmers saw the Iron Man in the trap, they .....

- a) **laughed**      b) **walked**      c) **shouted**      d) **picked up**

2- Hogarth made the sound of Clink! Clink ! by a metal .....

- a) **fence and a van**      b) **nail and a bike**  
 c) **fence and a knife**      d) **nail and a knife**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

1- What does Hogarth ask the Iron Man to stop doing?

2- How could Hogarth take the Iron Man to the trap ?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

The first plane flew 113 years ago. It was 6 metres long and 3 metres high. It weighed 250 kg. It wasn't very fast. It could fly 40 km/h

# Unit 13 Stay fit and healthy

البقاء بلياقة وصحة جيدة

## Aims of the unit

- 1- Read about how to stay fit and healthy.
- 2- Listen to people asking for advice .
- 3- Use question tags.
- 4- Write a dialogue.
- 5- Ask for and giving advice.
- 6- Carry out an internet search about food and vitamins.

## Lessons 1 & 2

fit	لائق - سليم	very often	كثيراً - أغلب الأحيان
healthy	صحي	natural	طبيعي
health	صحة	Meals	وجبات
vitamins	فيتامينات	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
diagram	رسم بياني	exercise	تمرين - تدريب
groups	جماعات - مجموعات	Brain	المخ
diet	نظام غذائي	at least	على الأقل
carbohydrates	كربوهيدرات - مواد نشوية	Sugar	سكر
bread	خبز	Cake	كعك - كيك
pasta	مكرونه	sweets	حلوى
rice	أرز	Milk	لبن
energy	طاقة	cheese	جبن
fruit	فاكهة	magazine	مجلة
vegetables	خضروات	yoghurt	زبادي
protein	بروتين	Beans	فول
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	Body	جسم
biscuits	بسكويت	carrots	جزر
nuts	سوداني - مكسرات	Butter	زبدة
lentils	عدس	Trees	أشجار
should	يجب أن	basketball team	فريق كرة السلة
strong	قوى	calcium	الكالسيوم
fats	دهون	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
bones	عظام	fish (pl.)	سمك
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	weather	الطقس

### Regular verbs

contain , ed , ed	يحتوى	try / tried / tried	يحاول - يجرب
exercise , d , d	يتمرن	like , d , d	يحب

### Irregular verbs

give / gave given	يعطى	grow / grew / grown	ينمو
eat / ate / eaten	يأكل	run / ran / run	يجرى
sleep / slept / slept	ينام	speak / spoke / spoken	يتكلم

## Text SB page 19

## Ask Doctor Sabrin about health

- Hamdi** : The food groups in the picture are good for us, aren't they?  
**Dr Sabrin** : Yes, a healthy diet contains food from each group. We should eat a lot of the carbohydrate in bread, pasta or rice to give us energy. We should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, too. These contain vitamins. Eat some protein and dairy products. Protein from meat, eggs, fish, beans, lentils and nuts helps our bodies to grow strong. The calcium in milk and cheese gives us strong bones and teeth. Don't have too much food that contains fat, but some kinds of fat are better than others. Fat in olive oil gives us energy and contains important vitamins. Too many sweets, cakes and biscuits aren't healthy, are they? We should try not to eat these foods very often. But the natural sugar in fruit and vegetables is fine.
- Mona** : We should always eat healthy meals, shouldn't we?  
**Dr Sabrin** : Yes, it's very important to eat healthy meals every day. Breakfast is the most important meal, because after sleep, the body needs energy.
- Sara** : Exercise can help us do better at school, can't it?  
**Dr Sabrin** : Yes, it can. Exercise helps you to study. It's good for the body and for the brain! But the body needs sleep too, doesn't it? Try to get at least eight hours of sleep every night.

## Grammar

## Question tags : الأسئلة الذيلية (اللاحقة)

هي أسئلة في نهاية جملة خبرية **statement** للتأكد من صحة المعلومات بها . ومعناها أليس كذلك ؟

**؟ سؤال لاحق question tag , جملة خبرية statement**

**؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفى , جملة مثبتة**

ويأتي السؤال المذيل **عكس الجملة** من ناحية الإثبات أو النفي .

ولا بد أن يكون النفي مختصر أي نستخدم ( **n't** ) وليس ( **not** ) ، ويتكون من :

**؟ ضمير فاعل S. pron. + فعل مساعد Helping V.**

- 1- لاحظ عزيزي الطالب ... أننا نستخدم نفس الفعل المساعد الموجود في الجملة إن وجد .  
 ومع الأزمنة التي لا تحتوي على فعل مساعد ، نستخدم من عندنا ( **V. to Do** ) .

**Positive sentence + Negative tag ?**

**؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت , جملة منفية**

- You **are** very clever today , **aren't you** ?      - This **is** your pen , **isn't it** ?  
 - Mona **writes** her answers , **doesn't she** ?      - He **can** drive a car , **can't he** ?  
 - You **should** study hard , **shouldn't you** ?      - They **go** to work on foot , **don't they** ?  
 - Soha **will go** to the market , **won't she** ?

**Negative sentence + Positive tag ?**

- Ali **doesn't go** to work , **does he** ?      - We **don't write** our answers , **do we** ?  
 - This **is not** your pen , **is it** ?      - You **shouldn't** waste time , **should you** ?  
 - He **can't** drive a car , **can he** ?      - You **are not** American , **are you** ?

2 – لاحظ الآتي : الفعل في هذه الامثلة ( has / had / have ) أفعال رئيسية وليست أفعال مساعدة وتعطى

معنى يمتلك / يحدث له / يتناول.

- He **has** a book, **doesn't** he?
- She **had** an accident, **didn't** she?

- They **have** a car, **don't** they?

3 - عند الإجابة على السؤال المذيل تكون الإجابة بالإثبات إذا كانت الجملة الرئيسية مثبتة :

- He **reads** a book, **doesn't** he?
- They **can help** you, **can't** they?

- **Yes, he does.**
- **Yes, they can.**

4- عند الإجابة على السؤال المذيل تكون الإجابة بالنفي إذا كانت الجملة الرئيسية منفية :

- He **doesn't** read a book, **does** he?
- They **can't** help you, **can** they?

- **No, he doesn't.**
- **No, they can't.**

### Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

- 1- What's the passage talking about ? a) **Vitamin C**    b) **Vitamin A**    c) **Vitamin D**
- 2- What is it important for ?                    a) **teeth**                    b) **ears**                    c) **hair**
- 3- What should we eat to get this vitamin ? a) **nuts**                    b) **beans**                    c) **peas**
- 4- What else can we find this vitamin in ? a) **chicken**    b) **tuna fish**    c) **koshari**

2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

- Tamer : Can I ask you a (1) ..... ?  
 Shadi : Yes , of (2) .....  
 Tamer : Which food is (3) ..... important to the body ,biscuits or fruit ?  
 Shadi : I (4) ..... fruit is more important than biscuits .  
 Tamer : Thanks , Shadi .  
 Shadi : You're welcome.

3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1) Hala : Which kind of sugar isn't bad for us ?  
 Engy : .....  
 Hala : Why is it good to eat a healthy breakfast ?  
 Engy : A healthy breakfast gives the body energy after sleep .
- 2) Marian : Which kinds of food should we eat a lot ?  
 Lillian : We should eat a lot of food that contains carbohydrate and vitamins.  
 Marian : ..... ?  
 Lillian : We should not eat food that contains fat and sugar very often.

3- Read the following , then answer the questions:

If you want to be fit , you need to think about three things : the food you eat , how much you exercise and how much you sleep. To be healthy , you need to eat different kinds of food . Food gives us energy , but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy . If you often eat food with too much fat in it , you might start to put on weight . You also need to exercise to feel healthy and happy . You shouldn't sleep too much or you will become lazy . You should sleep eight hours a night .

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Why do you need to eat different kinds of food ?
- 2- What do you need to feel healthy and happy ?

B) Choose the correct answer :

- 3- You shouldn't eat food with too much ..... in it .  
 a) **water**                    b) **milk**                    c) **juice**                    d) **fat**

- 4- A healthy ..... gives us the right quantities of energy .  
 a) **diet**                      b) **body**                      c) **sleeping**                      d) **exercise**
- 5- If you sleep too much , you will become ..... .  
 a) **happy**                      b) **lazy**                      c) **good**                      d) **healthy**

**4- Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- Which ..... of food should we eat a lot ?  
 a) **colours**                      b) **kinds**                      c) **means**                      d) **measurements**
- 2- ..... is in bread, pasta or rice.  
 a) **Protein**                      b) **Energy**                      c) **Calcium**                      d) **Carbohydrate**
- 3- ..... is in meat, eggs, fish, beans, lentils and nuts.  
 a) **Calcium**                      b) **Carbohydrate**                      c) **Protein**                      d) **Energy**
- 4- Don't have too much food that contains ..... .  
 a) **Protein**                      b) **Energy**                      c) **Calcium**                      d) **fat**
- 5- The natural ..... in fruit and vegetables is fine.  
 a) **bread**                      b) **sugar**                      c) **salt**                      d) **tea**
- 6- Too many ..... , cakes and biscuits aren't healthy.  
 a) **sweets**                      b) **exercises**                      c) **groups**                      d) **meal**
- 7- We should always eat healthy..... , shouldn't we?  
 a) **exercises**                      b) **sweets**                      c) **meals**                      d) **groups**
- 8- Exercise ..... you to study.  
 a) **needs**                      b) **helps**                      c) **contains**                      d) **tries**
- 9- Try to get at ..... eight hours of sleep every night.  
 a) **last**                      b) **lost**                      c) **list**                      d) **least**
- 10- We should eat a lot of food that ..... carbohydrate and vitamins.  
 a) **contains**                      b) **runs**                      c) **likes**                      d) **grows**
- 11- Is the Suez Canal .....? - No, it is not natural. People made it.  
 a) **important**                      b) **normal**                      c) **natural**                      d) **people made**
- 12- Too many sweets , cakes and biscuits aren't healthy , ..... they?  
 a) **aren't**                      b) **are**                      c) **don't**                      d) **doesn't**
- 13- We should always eat healthy meals, ..... we?  
 a) **can't**                      b) **can**                      c) **shouldn't**                      d) **should**
- 14- Exercise can help us do better at school, ..... it?  
 a) **are**                      b) **do**                      c) **can't**                      d) **can**
- 15- The food groups we should eat are good for us, ..... they?  
 a) **isn't**                      b) **are not**                      c) **shouldn't**                      d) **aren't** **متفوقين**
- 16- Today the weather isn't hot , ..... ?  
 a) **it is**                      b) **is it**                      c) **it's**                      d) **its**
- 17- At the weekend, we ..... go shopping, can't we?  
 a) **can't**                      b) **can**                      c) **couldn't**                      d) **could**
- 18- They have a car, ..... they ?  
 a) **haven't**                      b) **have**                      c) **don't**                      d) **have not**
- 19- He reads a book every two weeks, ..... he?  
 a) **don't**                      b) **isn't**                      c) **don't**                      d) **doesn't**
- 20- Fat in ..... gives us energy and contains important vitamins.  
 a) **sweets**                      b) **cakes**                      c) **biscuits**                      d) **olive oil**
- 21- We should ..... not to eat unhealthy food very often .  
 a) **try**                      b) **eat**                      c) **exercise**                      d) **help**
- 22- Exercise is good ..... the body and for the brain!  
 a) **to**                      b) **with**                      c) **for**                      d) **at**
- 23- Nobody lives in this house, ..... ?  
 a) **do they**                      b) **doesn't he**                      c) **don't they**                      d) **does he**
- 24- This film is interesting , ..... it?  
 a) **its**                      b) **isn't**                      c) **is not**                      d) **is**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Do you find bones inside and outside the body ?
- 2- Does nuts or apples contain the most protein ?
- 3-What is exercise good to ?
- 4- We should not eat food that contains fat and sugar every often .
- 5- Yes , it is not natural . People made it.
- 6- If you have a lot of energy, do you wanted to run or sleep?
- 7- After school, we should do our homework, should not we?
- 8- Eat some protein and diary products.
- 9- You like shopping, do you?
- 10- Our teacher are very helpful, aren't they?
- 11- Your favourite sport is basketball, is it?

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" Stay fit and healthy "

You may use these words:

( lot / carbohydrate – not / fat – too / sweets – breakfast – exercise )

To stay fit and healthy you should keep your body healthy.

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

Vitamin A is very important for health. It's important for your eyes, teeth and growing bones. We should eat dairy products, peas and tuna fish.

**Lessons 3 , 4 & Review**

sports team	فريق رياضى	breath	التنفس
fit	لائق بدنياً	chemical	كيميائى
hungry	جوعان	chemistry	الكيمياء
difficult	صعب	lungs	الرئتين
advice	نصيحة	tobacco	تبغ
vocabulary	مفردات	cigarettes	سجائر
hobby	هواية	dangerous	خطير
programme	برنامج	smoking	التدخين
fitness	اللياقة البدنية	fingers	أصابع اليد
questions	أسئلة	cheap	رخيص الثمن
hard	صعب / صلب	expensive	غالى الثمن
though	بالرغم من	problems	مشاكل
minutes	دقائق	smokers	مدخنون
completely	تماماً	human body	جسم الإنسان
photographs	صور فوتوغرافية	during	أثناء
volleyball	الكرة الطائرة	practising	ممارسة / تدريب
notes	ملحوظات	glasses	أكواب / نظارات
story	قصة	test	إختبار
starting	البدء	unhealthy	غير صحى
adults	البالغون	topic	موضوع
final	نهائى	asleep	نائم
parts	أجزاء	teeth	أسنان

**Regular verbs**

live , d , d	يعيش	start , ed , ed	يبدأ
try / tried / tried	يحاول	relax , ed , ed	يسترخى
advise, d , d	ينصح	breathe , d , d	يتنفس
smoke, d , d	يدخن	damage , d , d	يتلف / يدمر
stop , ped , ped	يتوقف	practise , d , d	يمارس
increase , d , d	يزيد	happen , ed , ed	يحدث
taste , d , d	يتذوق	use , d , d	يستخدم

**Irregular verb**

get fit / got / got	يصبح لائق	find / found / found	يجد
eat / ate / eaten	يأكل	read / read / read	يقرأ
learn / learnt / learnt	يتعلم	give / gave / given	يعطي
feel / felt / felt	يشعر	take off / took / taken	تقلع
smell / smelt / smelt	يشم	leave / left / left	يترك
go on / went / gone	يستمر	let / let / let	يسمح
fall / fell / fallen	يقع	come from / came / come	يأتي من

**Text SB Page 22**

**Tobacco** in cigarettes **contains** a dangerous **chemical**. This is very bad for your health and can make you ill. Some people who **smoke** cannot run or do exercise, because the chemical in the **cigarettes damages** their **lungs** and they can't **breathe** very well. **Smoking** can make people's fingers and teeth yellow, too. People who start smoking find it very difficult to stop, because their bodies need the **chemical** . **Cigarettes** are very expensive, too.

**Language notes**

**fit ( adj.)** ( **keep / get / be** ) **صفة بمعنى لائق بدياً و غالباً تأتي بعد الأفعال**

- Exercise is the best and quickest way to get **fit!**
- You should keep **fit** to be healthy.
- **Sportsmen are fit.**

**fitness ( n.)** **إسم بمعنى اللياقة البدنية**

- Our topic this week is health and **fitness**.
- **Fitness** is important for football players.

**breath ( n)** **إسم بمعنى التنفس**

- I was tired because I was out of **breath**.
- Smoking is bad for **breath**.

**breathe ( v)** **فعل بمعنى يتنفس**

- Smokers cannot **breathe** very well.
- We can **breathe** with our nose.

**smoke ( v. and n. )** **فعل بمعنى يدخن و اسم بمعنى دخان**

- People who **smoke** (v.) cannot run or do exercise.
- There's **smoke** (n. ) coming out of the kitchen window.

**smoking ( n.)** **إسم بمعنى التدخين**

- **Smoking** damages the lungs.
- **Smoking** is bad for your teeth and fingers.

**smoker ( n. ) = a person who smokes cigarettes** **إسم بمعنى شخص مدخن**

- Smokers do harm to non **smokers** .
- What health problems do many **smokers** have?



Tobacco ( n. ) إسم بمعنى تبغ ( مادة يصنع منها السجائر )

- **Tobacco** in cigarettes contains a dangerous chemical.
- China is the biggest country in making **tobacco**.

advice (n.) إسم بمعنى نصيحة ( لا يعد )

- Doctor Sabrin will give you **advice**.
- To get fit quickly, my **advice** is to do ten minutes of exercise a day.

advise ( v. ) = give advice فعل بمعنى ينصح

- Doctor Sabrin will **advise** you.
- To get fit quickly, I **advise** you to do ten minutes of exercise a day.

## Language functions

### Asking for advice طلب النصيحة

How can I + (inf.) مصدر ؟ كيف أستطيع .....

- How can I** get fit quickly? كيف أستطيع أن أصبح لائق بدنيا بسرعة ؟
- How can I** log onto the internet ? **How can I** write an email ?

What can I + (inf.) مصدر ؟ ماذا يمكن أن أفعل ..... لكى .....

- What can I** do to get fit quickly ? - **What can I** do to log onto the internet?
- What can I** do to sleep at easily at night ?
- I know sweets are bad for me, but I often feel hungry. **What can I do** ?

What should I (inf.) مصدر ؟ ماذا يجب أن أفعل ..... لكى .....

- What should I** do to get fit quickly ?
- What should I** do to log onto the internet?
- What should I** do to sleep easily at night ?
- I know sweets are bad for me, but I often feel hungry. **What should I do** ?

### Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة

Why don't you + مصدر ..... ؟ لم لا .....

- **Why don't you** do exercise ? - **Why don't you** ask your computer teacher?

Try + ger. .... حاول .....

- **Try** doing exercise regularly. - **Try** reading a book about the internet.

Try not to + مصدر جرب ألا .....

- **Try not to** eat fats. - **Try not to** log onto bad websites.

How / What about + ger. .... ؟ ماذا عن / ما رأيك فى .....

- **How / What about** doing ten minutes of exercise a day?
- **How / What about** reading a book about the internet ?

You could + مصدر ..... يمكنك أن .....

- **You could** do ten minutes of exercise a day.
- **You could** read a book about the internet.

It's a good idea to + مصدر ..... إنها فكرة طيبة أن .....

- **It's a good idea to** do ten minutes of exercise a day.
- **It's a good idea to** read a book about the internet.

..... should / shouldn't + inf. مصدر .....

- You **should do** more exercise .
- You **should read** a book about the internet.

## Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :

- 1- What's A's problem ? - It's difficult for him to ..... .  
 a) **sleep at night**                      b) **eat more sweets**                      c) **make diet**
- 2- What's A's name ? - ..... .  
 a) **Baher**                                      b) **Ahmed**                                      c) **Magdy**
- 3- What does the doctor give him? - ..... .  
 a) **A hobby**                                      b) **Advice**                                      c) **A diet**
- 4- What does the doctor advise him to do? - ..... .  
 a) **Doing some exercise every day.**  
 b) **Eating some fruit when he's hungry**  
 c) **relaxing completely before he goes to bed**

### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

Hazem : Why is it bad to (1) ..... if you like doing sport ?

**Nabil** : Because smokers cannot (2) ..... very well.

Hazem : What health problems do many smokers have ?

**Nabil** : The chemicals in (3) ..... can make you ill. Smoking amages the lungs and you cannot breathe very well.

Hazem : Do you think it is (4) ..... for people to smoke when children are near ?

**Nabil** : Yes, it is .

### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1) **Essam** : ..... ?  
**Hassan** : It is bad for our lungs.  
**Essam** : Right. Smoking damages the lungs.
- 2) **Hadeer** : I want to live a healthy life. What can I do?  
**Nagham** : .....  
**Hadeer** : What about tennis?  
**Nagham** : It's an interesting sport.

### 4- Read the following , then answer the questions:

Tobacco in cigarettes contains a dangerous chemical. This is very bad for your health and can make you ill. Some people who smoke cannot run or do exercise, because the chemical in the cigarettes damages their lungs and **they** can't breathe very well. Smoking can make people's fingers and teeth yellow, too. People who start smoking find it very difficult to stop, because their bodies need the chemical .Cigarettes are very expensive, too.

#### A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- What's tobacco dangerous for ?
- 2- Why do people who start smoking find it very difficult to stop?

#### B) Choose the correct answer :

- 3- Chemical in cigarettes damages ..... .  
 a) **tobacco**                      b) **smoke**                      c) **exercise**                      d) **lungs**
- 4- The underlined **they** refers to ..... .  
 a) **lungs**                      b) **smokers**                      c) **cigarettes**                      d) **bodies**
- 5- Cigarettes are not ..... .  
 a) **expensive**                      b) **fast**                      c) **dangerous**                      d) **cheap**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1- John always drives ..... .  
a) **bad**                      b) **badly**                      c) **more bad**                      d) **most bad**
- 2- I don't think he'll do the homework at night, ..... he ?  
a) **do**                      b) **don't**                      c) **will**                      d) **won't**
- 3- That's not the right answer, ..... it?  
a) **is**                      b) **isn't**                      c) **do**                      d) **don't**
- 4- I want to be good ..... tennis!  
a) **for**                      b) **to**                      c) **at**                      d) **in**
- 5- ..... is bad for you, isn't it ?  
a) **Sweets**                      b) **Nuts**                      c) **Exercises**                      d) **Smoking**
- 6- Thank you, Doctor, for your ..... advice.  
a) **good**                      b) **well**                      c) **bad**                      d) **carefully**
- 7- To keep ....., do more exercise.  
a) **fitness**                      b) **fitter**                      c) **fat**                      d) **fit**
- 8- How about reading a ..... in bed?  
a) **lung**                      b) **book**                      c) **tobacco**                      d) **chemical**
- 9- I ..... to live a healthy life. What can I do?  
a) **stop**                      b) **smoke**                      c) **increase**                      d) **want**
- 10- What new hobby can I start ? - Try ..... sports every day.  
a) **advising**                      b) **practising**                      c) **smelling**                      d) **damaging**
- 11- When I ..... my glasses at home, I can't remember where I put them.  
a) **take**                      b) **practise**                      c) **live**                      d) **leave**
- 12- I find it ..... to go to sleep at night, and I'm often tired in the morning.  
a) **difficult**                      b) **easy**                      c) **hungry**                      d) **healthy**
- 13- You should ..... more exercise to be fit .  
a) **did**                      b) **do**                      c) **doing**                      d) **does**
- 14- In the past , people's jobs ..... them to be fit .  
a) **help**                      b) **helping**                      c) **helped**                      d) **helps**
- 15- You could ..... swimming at the weekend.  
a) **go**                      b) **going**                      c) **went**                      d) **goes**
- 16- Try ..... ten minutes of exercise every morning.  
a) **did**                      b) **do**                      c) **doing**                      d) **does**
- 17- Do you think it is dangerous ..... people to smoke when children are near?  
a) **for**                      b) **to**                      c) **at**                      d) **by**
- 18- Lungs are the parts of ..... body that fill with air .  
a) **you**                      b) **yours**                      c) **your**                      d) **yourself**
- 19- Chemical is something people make ..... use in chemistry.  
a) **too**                      b) **so**                      c) **but**                      d) **to**
- 20- Don't ....., I need you here.  
a) **goes**                      b) **went**                      c) **going**                      d) **go**
- 21- Nicole always does her homework ..... .  
a) **good**                      b) **well**                      c) **careful**                      d) **quick**
- 22- You didn't go to Luxor last week, ..... you?  
a) **was**                      b) **were**                      c) **did**                      d) **will**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- China is the biggest country in making lungs.
- 2- What health problems do many smokes have?
- 5- My little sister does not like go to sleep.
- 7- The weather was extreme cold.
- 9- He has his lunch at two, hasn't he?
- 11- Why don't you going shopping for him?
- 13- This man smoke and can't do exercise.
- 15- Smoking is good for your teeth and fingers.
- 17- Fat is important for football players.
- 2- Try play tennis every week.
- 4- Ahmad eats quick.
- 6- Nawal always walk slowly.
- 8- You don't like tea, don't you?
- 10- What about start a new hobby?
- 12- I feel tiring. I should go to bed.
- 14- Why not you play volleyball?
- 16- I have an English test last week.

7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :

" Keeping fit "

You may use these words:(ten minutes – fruits – instead of – a book – relax completely)

Here are some ways to be fit quickly. First .....

.....  
.....  
.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

- A : Your name's Ahmed, isn't it?
- B : Yes, it is. My problem is this: I find it difficult to go to sleep at night.
- A : It's a good idea to relax completely before you go to bed at night.
- B : Thank you, Doctor Baher, for your good advice.

General Test on Unit 13

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

- 1- What's the passage talking about ? - Vitamin .....
  - a) A
  - b) D
  - c) C
- 2- When can we get the vitamin? - In the early .....
  - a) sun
  - b) moon
  - c) stars
- 3- What does it help the body keep?
  - a) Fats
  - b) Cryohydrate
  - c) Calcium
- 3- Where can we find it ?
  - a) Vegetables
  - b) Diary milk
  - c) Pasta

2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

- Mai : Does your little sister sleep a lot ?
- Noha : Yes, she does. She's four years old.
- Mai : We have much less sleep, (1)..... we ?
- Noha : Yes, we do. We (2)..... sleep about nine or ten hours a night.
- Mai : Your parents don't sleep as long as us, do (3)..... ?
- Noha : No, they don't. Most adults sleep for about eight hours a (4).....

3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1) Nader : ..... ?
- Karam : Milk and cheese make our bones and teeth strong.
- Nader : And what about healthy fat?
- Karam : Olive oil is an example of a healthy fat.
- 2) Shaymaa : You aren't watching this TV programme, are you?
- Sojoud : .....
- Shaymaa : So, what are you doing now ?
- Sojoud : I'm doing my homework.

4- Read the following , then answer the questions:

Dear Nouran,

I'm happy to write you that letter after your question about how to be fit and healthy. First, exercise is the best and quickest way to get fit. Try doing ten minutes of exercise a day and increase the time as the weeks go on. That way you'll get fitter. Next, sweets are bad for you. Eat some fruit when you're hungry, instead of sweets because they contain sugar that gives you energy and vitamins. Finally, about your sleeping problem, try reading a book in bed. You'll start feeling tired and then you'll fall asleep easily.

Best wishes,

Yours,  
Naglaa

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What does Naglaa advise Nouran about sleeping problem?
- 2- Why are fruit important for us ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- The underlines word they refers to ..... .  
 a) **exercise**                      b) **sweets**                      c) **fruit**                      d) **reading a book**
- 4- Sweets are not ..... for us.  
 a) **bad**                      b) **good**                      c) **well**                      d) **quickest**
- 5- ..... will make Nouran fall asleep easily.  
 a) **Reading a book**                      b) **Vitamins**                      c) **Energy**                      d) **Eating fruit**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- ..... don't you do some exercises every day? – It's a good idea.  
 a) **How**                      b) **Why**                      c) **Who**                      d) **What**
- 2- Some animals can run fast , ..... they?  
 a) **can**                      b) **can not**                      c) **can't**                      d) **couldn't**
- 3- ..... your notes carefully.  
 a) **Read**                      b) **Eat**                      c) **Play**                      d) **Exercise**
- 4- ..... important that people have enough vitamins, isn't it ?  
 a) **Is it**                      b) **It's**                      c) **It has**                      d) **Its**
- 5- I want to give my mum a present, ..... I haven't got any money.  
 a) **so**                      b) **to**                      c) **because**                      d) **but**
- 6- He couldn't understand his maths homework, ..... ?  
 a) **he could**                      b) **couldn't he**                      c) **could he**                      d) **he couldn't**
- 7- ..... is very dangerous for your health because of chemical in it.  
 a) **Smoking**                      b) **Fats**                      c) **Breath**                      d) **Vitamin**
- 8- It ..... Friday today, is it?  
 a) **not is**                      b) **is not**                      c) **is**                      d) **was**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- My little sister always makes noisier when I'm doing my homework.
- 2- You can find vitamins in many kinds of food, can you ?
- 3- Pasta and rice contain fat .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" **Smoking** "

You may use these words:

( **tobacco** – **lung** – **breath** – **fingers and teeth** – **expensive** )

Smoking is very dangerous for health. ....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- What did Hogarth hear while he was waiting for the fox ?  
 a) **Clink! Clink! Clink!**                      b) **Sound of the fox.**  
 c) **His father shouting**                      d) **The Iron Man eating a metal fence.**
- 2- Hogarth wanted the Iron man to eat old objects ..... the new ones.  
 a) **but**                      b) **instead of**                      c) **and**                      d) **with**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why do you think the Iron Man is happy in the scrap metal yard?
- 2- What did the farmers do when they saw the Iron Man in the trap ?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

Vitamin D is important to the human body to keep calcium and make bones strong. We get it in the early sun and from fish and dairy milk.

# Unit 14 The body

## الجسم

### Aims of the unit

- 1- Read about keeping healthy.
- 2- Listen to conversation between a doctor and her patients.
- 3- Use Reflexive pronouns & the first conditional .
- 4- Write a letter about health.
- 5- Talk about health problems.

### Lessons 1 & 2

back	ظهر	the body	الجسم
brain	المخ	bending	الإنحناء
eye	عين	unless	إذا لم
heart	قلب	heavy weight	وزن ثقيل
knee	ركبة	mirror	مرآة
skin	جلد البشرة ( للإنسان )	tomorrow	غداً
teeth	أسنان	patient	مريض
legs	أرجل	in the middle	في الوسط
some ideas	بعض الأفكار	behind	خلف
glasses	نظارة / أكواب	beats	نبضات القلب
lives	حيوات	the Eiffel Tower	برج أيفل ( باريس )
loud	عالي الصوت	grandparents	أجداد
through	خلال / عبر	Sinai	سيناء
earphones	سماعة أذن	holiday	أجازة
clearly	بوضوح	summer	الصيف
preparing	الإعداد	test	أختبار
bath	حمام	medicine	دواء / طب

### Regular verbs

stay , ed , ed	يقيم	brush , ed , ed	يغسل بالفرشاة
damage , d , d	يتلف	listen to , ed , ed	يستمع إلى
Cover , ed , ed	يغطي	smile , d , d	يبتسم
prepare , d , d	يعد / يجهز	look , ed , ed	ينظر
lift , ed , ed	يرفع	test , ed , ed	يختبر
phone , d , d	يتصل	arrive , d , d	يصل
live , ed , ed	يعيش	paint , ed , ed	يرسم / يلون

### Irregular verbs

wear / wore / worn	يرتدى	make / made / made	يصنع / يجعل
beat / beat / beaten	ينبض	hurt / hurt / hurt	يجرح
see / saw / seen	يرى	get / got / got ( gotten)	يحصل على
hear / heard / heard	يسمع	bend / bent / bent	ينحني
burn / burnt / burnt	يحرق	become / became / become	يصبح

## Text SB page 24

*Stay healthy!*

We all want to be fit and healthy. Doctors can give us medicine that can help us when we are ill, but how can we look after ourselves, so that we don't become ill very often? **Here are some ideas:**

- If you brush your teeth every day, they will stay strong and healthy. Too much sugar will damage them, so don't eat too many sweets!
- Most of us will wear glasses at some time in our lives. It's a good idea to have an eye test every year.
- If you often listen to loud music, you won't be able to hear very well. So when you listen to music through earphones, don't have it too loud!
- Exercise is good for you. It makes the heart beat faster. It's also good for the brain, because exercise helps you to think clearly.
- Spend a few minutes preparing yourself for exercise. You will hurt your back if you lift a heavy weight without bending your legs at the knees.
- A little sun is good for you, but be careful. Unless you cover yourself when you go outside, your skin will burn in the sun.

## Language notes

earphones ( pl. n.)

سماعات الأذن

- I always listen to music through **earphones**.

most of

معظم / أغلب

- **Most of** the people today have mobile phones.

burn ( v. &amp; n. )

فعل بمعنى يحرق أو يحترق و إسم بمعنى حرق أو احتراق

- The sun can **burn** your skin.- A **burn** is damage to an area of the body.

look + adj. يبدو ..... صفة

look hungry

يبدو جائعا

- You **look hungry**, so I'll prepare food immediately.

look tired

يبدو مرهق / متعب

You **look tired** , so you should relax.

look after :

يرعى ، يعتنى بـ

- Soha **looked after** her little sister .- Students in Soha's class **look after** the environment .

in front of

أمام

- The library is **in front of** the music room.

behind = at the back

خلف

- You can't see your back because it is **behind** you.

In the middle of

في منتصف .....

- Knees are in **the middle of** your legs.

beat (v)

ينبض

- My heart **beats** quickly after exercise.

beats (n)

نبضات

- Normal hearts always **beat 60 beats** a minute.

# Grammar

## الحالة الأولى من الجمل الشرطية : First conditional :

تعبير الحالة الأولى عن شرط ممكن أو محتمل الحدوث في الحاضر أو المستقبل .

مصدر **will / won't + inf.** , مضارع بسيط **If + pres. simp.**

لاحظ أن ... الجملة التي بها ( **if** ) تحتوى على فعل الشرط ، والجملة الأخرى الرئيسية تحتوى على جواب الشرط .

- ☞ **If it rains** , I **will stay** at home .
- ☞ **If you brush** your teeth, they **will stay strong** .
- ☞ You **will hurt your back** if you **lift** a heavy weight .
- ☞ **If you don't run**, you **won't catch** the bus .

## إذا لم Unless

أى أننا نعبر عن شرط منفي باستخدام **If ..... not** ، وهذا هو معنى **Unless** .  
ويمكننا استخدام **unless** بنفس المعنى السابق ، ونطبق نفس القاعدة .

**will / won't + inf.** , مضارع بسيط **Pres. Simp.** إذا لم **unless**

- ☞ **Unless you go** to bed early , you **will be** tired tomorrow .
- ☞ **If you don't get up** early , you **will be** late for school .
- ☞ **Unless you get up** early , you **will be** late for school .
- ☞ **If you don't hurry up** , you **won't catch** the bus .
- ☞ **Unless you hurry up** , you **won't catch** the bus .

## الضمائر المنعكسة (الانعكاسية) Reflexive pronouns :

<b>S.</b> فاعل	مفعول ( نفس الشخص ) <b>O.</b>	يتحول إلى	ضمير منعكس <b>R. Pron.</b>
-------------------	-------------------------------	--------------	----------------------------

هي ضمائر تعود أو تنعكس على فاعل الجملة نفسه . ويمكن استخدامها عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول نفس الشخص في جملة واحدة .  
( فاعل ومفعول مختلفان ) ☞ **I am looking at him** .  
( الفاعل هو نفس المفعول ) ☞ **I am looking at myself** in the mirror .

<b>I</b>	<b>We</b>	<b>He</b>	<b>She</b>	<b>It</b>
<b>myself</b>	<b>ourselves</b>	<b>himself</b>	<b>herself</b>	<b>itself</b>
<b>You (sing.)</b> مفرد		<b>You (pl.)</b> جمع		<b>They</b>
<b>yourself</b>		<b>yourselves</b>		<b>themselves</b>

- ☞ When **she** looked at the mirror , **she** saw **herself** .
- ☞ **She** did the English homework **herself** .

عند وجود فاعلان في الجملة يحدث بينهما فعل مشترك ، مثلا ينظر كل منهما إلى الآخر ( بخلاف أن ينظر كل منهما إلى نفسه ) ، نستخدم **each other** .

- ☞ **Dalia and I** looked at **each other** .

ملحوظة

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

- 1- What will Nour do if it is hot this weekend ? - He will .....  
a) **stay in bed**                      b) **go to the beach**                      c) **read a book**
- 2- When will Nour stay in bed ?                      - If he is .....  
a) **ill**                                      b) **hot**                                      c) **cold**
- 3- Will Nour go to the beach if it is hot?  
a) **Yes, he does.**                      b) **No, he won't.**                      c) **Yes, he'll.**
- 4- Will Nour go to the doctor if he is ill ?  
a) **No, he doesn't.**                      b) **Yes, he'll**                              c) **No, he won't.**



**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

**Hossam:** What will your parents say if you do well in your exams?

**Farid :** (1) ..... I do well in my exams, they will say "well done!"

**Hossam:** Where will you go if you (2) ..... on holiday in the summer?

**Farid :** If I go on holiday in the summer, I (3) ..... go to my grandparents' house in Sinai.

**Hossam:** What will you do tomorrow if you (4) ..... ill?

**Farid :** If I'm ill, I'll stay in bed tomorrow.

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

a) **Marwa** : What will happen if you look at a mirror ?

**Sahar** : .....

b) **Waleed** : .....

**Zaki** : Yes , I did the homework by myself .

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

Here are some ideas if you want to be fit and healthy. If you brush your teeth every day, they will stay strong and healthy. Too much sugar will damage **them** , so don't eat too many sweets. If you often listen to loud music, you won't be able to hear very well. Exercise is good for you. It makes the heart beat faster. It's also good for the brain, because exercise helps you to think clearly. A little sun is good for you, but be careful. Unless you cover yourself when you go outside, your skin will burn in the sun.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

1- How can we make our teeth strong and healthy?

2- What makes the heart beat faster ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

3- The underlines word **them** refers to .....

- a) **exercises**      b) **skins**      c) **ideas**      d) **teeth**

4- Your skin won't ..... if you cover yourself when you go outside in the sun.

- a) **beat**      b) **burn**      c) **listen**      d) **exercise**

3- ..... sun isn't good for you .

- a) **Many**      b) **A little**      c) **Much**      d) **Little**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1- If your friends want a glass of water, they can help .....

- a) **himself**      b) **yourself**      c) **ourselves**      d) **themselves**

2- Unless you ..... early , you will be late for school .

- a) **got up**      b) **will get up**      c) **getting up**      d) **gets up**

3- If you are careful, you ..... get wet .

- a) **will**      b) **will be**      c) **won't**      d) **won't be**

4- You can hear with your .....

- a) **eyes**      b) **knees**      c) **brain**      d) **ears**

5- She was dirty , so she washed .....

- a) **her**      b) **herself**      c) **she**      d) **hers**

6- When they looked at the mirror , they couldn't see .....

- a) **themselves**      b) **ourselves**      c) **them**      d) **theirs**

7- You won't catch the bus ..... you hurry .

- a) **unless**      b) **if**      c) **because**      d) **and**

8- It's OK , Yasser . I can switch on the radio .....

- a) **me**      b) **my**      c) **myself**      d) **mine**

9- Too much sugar will ..... your teeth.

- a) **damage**      b) **brush**      c) **spend**      d) **exercise**

10- The sun can ..... your skin.

- a) **cover**      b) **want**      c) **give**      d) **burn**

- 11- Ahmed didn't ..... the box carefully, so he hurt his back.  
 a) **burn**                      b) **cover**                      c) **lift**                      d) **bend**
- 12- Exercise helps you to think .....  
 a) **clear**                      b) **clearer**                      c) **clearest**                      d) **clearly**
- 13- She looked at the mirror , but ..... didn't see herself .  
 a) **himself**                      b) **she**                      c) **her**                      d) **his**
- 14- Unless you eat enough for breakfast, you ..... very hungry before lunchtime.  
 a) **be**                      b) **will**                      c) **will be**                      d) **would be**
- 15- ..... my cousin does well in his exams, he will go to university.  
 a) **Unless**                      b) **If**                      c) **To**                      d) **And**
- 16- If we ..... Paris, we will see the Eiffel Tower.  
 a) **visited**                      b) **visiting**                      c) **visit**                      d) **will visit**
- 17- I can't help you , Ahmad. You must write the letter .....  
 a) **yourselves**                      b) **yourself**                      c) **himself**                      d) **myself**
- 18- The small boy smiled when he saw ..... on the television.  
 a) **yourself**                      b) **myself**                      c) **itself**                      d) **himself**
- 19- If I ..... the computer for ten minutes, it turns itself off.  
 a) **doesn't use**                      b) **don't use**                      c) **didn't use**                      d) **won't use**
- 20- We can see with our .....  
 a) **knees**                      b) **ears**                      c) **eyes**                      d) **heart**
- 21- We can see ourselves in a .....  
 a) **book**                      b) **mirror**                      c) **dictionary**                      d) **earphones**
- 22- If you brush your teeth every day, they will stay ..... and healthy.  
 a) **weak**                      b) **yellow**                      c) **dirty**                      d) **strong**
- 23- Most of us will ..... glasses at some time in our lives.  
 a) **beat**                      b) **wear**                      c) **damage**                      d) **hear**
- 24- When you listen to music through ..... , don't have it too loud!  
 a) **earphones**                      b) **knees**                      c) **mirrors**                      d) **books**
- 25- Exercise makes the heart ..... faster.  
 a) **cover**                      b) **stay**                      c) **beat**                      d) **burn**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- We have too eyes in our face.                      2- If you eat, you will be hungry.  
 3- If you don't eat, you be hungry.                      4- I'm phone you when I arrive.  
 5- If something is bright , it is fill of light .  
 6- The test will be difficult if you revise well .  
 7- Salma want hear unless you speak loudly .  
 8- Unless you will sleep now , you will be tired tomorrow.  
 9- She is too young so that wash herself .                      10- If you are careful , you will fall off.  
 11- We painted the house themselves .  
 12- Manar is too young to wash himself .  
 13- If you aren't careful, you won't get dirty .  
 14- Unless you don't go to bed early , you will be tired tomorrow .  
 15- Nancy is happy . Noura is happy , two .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" The doctor's advice "

You may use these words:

( **brush / everyday – eye test / every year – loud music – exercise / heart – a little sun** )

Yesterday I went to the doctor, he advised me to do many things. ....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

- Hady : What will you do if it's very hot this weekend?  
 Nour : If it's very hot this weekend, I'll go to the beach.  
 Hady : What will you do tomorrow if you are ill?  
 Nour : If I'm ill, I'll stay in bed tomorrow.

Lessons 3 , 4 & Review

ankle	كاحل القدم - رسغ القدم	toes	أصابع القدم
cold	بارد / بردان	fingers	أصابع اليد
headache	صداع	leg	ساق
toothache	ألم الأسنان	eye	العين
stomach-ache	ألم المعدة (مغص)	knees	الركبتين
arm	ذراع	head	رأس
stomach	معدة	hands	الأيدي
hot	حار / حران	floor	الأرضية
soon	قريباً / عاجلاً	the sky	السماء
hospital	مستشفى	plastic	مادة البلاستيك
chair	كرسي	jumper	بلوفر
weights	أوزان	behind	خلف

Regular verbs

look well ,ed , ed	يبدو حسناً	move , d , d	يتحرك
touch ,ed , ed	يلمس	dress ,ed , ed	يرتدى
lift ,ed , ed	يرفع	stretch ,ed , ed	يمتد - يمد
finish ,ed , ed	ينتهي	pass ,ed , ed	يمر / يجتاز

Irregular verbs

hurt / hurt / hurt	يجرح	break/ broke / broken	يكسر
feel /felt / felt	يشعر	fall / fell / fallen	يقع
hold / held / held	يمسك	sit / sat / sat	يجلس
bend / bent / bent	ينحني	see / saw / seen	يرى
run / ran / run	يجرى	forget / forgot / forgotten	ينسى

Language notes

I'm sorry to hear that. (يؤسفني أن أسمع هذا) (تستخدم عن مواساة شخص)

- I had : My stomach hurts and I've got toothache, too.

- Doctor : I'm sorry to hear that .

- I'm sorry to hear that you broke your arm.

fingers أصابع اليد

- Smoking can make people's **fingers** and teeth yellow.

toes اصابع القدم

- I can touch my **toes** with my **fingers**.

bend (v.) فعل بمعنى ينحني / يحني

- You can **bend** a plastic ruler easily. - It's too hard to **bend** a metal coin.

stretch ( v. ) بمعنى يمتد / يمدد

- Let's **stretch** our legs. - Dad **stretched** after dinner.

hold ( v. ) فعل بمعنى يمسك

- **Hold** the ball in both hands - I can **hold** a ruler, but I can't **hold** the air.

touch ( v. ) فعل بمعنى يلمس

Don't **touch** the stove. I can **touch** my ears, but I can't **touch** my brain.

## Language functions

### Asking about health problems:

عندما نريد السؤال عن المشكلات الصحية أو ما حدث لشخص ما نستخدم :

- What's the matter?
- How do you feel?
- What happened to you?

ما الأمر / المشكلة ؟

كيف / بما تشعر ؟

ماذا حدث لك ؟

### Talking about health problems:

لنرد على السؤال عن الحالة الصحية أو ما حدث لي نستخدم :

- I feel hot/cold.
- I hurt my (ankle).
- My (arm/back/stomach) hurts.
- I've got toothache/a headache/a cold/a stomach-ache.

أشعر بالبرد أو السخونية.

جرحت كاحلي.

ذراعي / ظهري / معدتي تؤلمني.

أنا عندي ألم في أسناني / صداع / برد / ألم بالمعدة.

## Writing skills

1- تستخدم الشرطة ( - ) الفاصلة عند كتابة الأرقام بعد 20 و 30 و 40 ..... الخ

twenty-one, seventy-five, ..... etc.

Nineteen fifty-six ( 1956 ) was quite a year.

Twenty-three hundred sixty-one ( 2361 ) people visited the Pyramids, yesterday.

لاحظ أن hundred جاءت هنا بدون s لأنها صفة .

2- تكتب الفاصلة - بين أرقام العمر عندما يتم استخدام العمر كصفة .

Hazem is twelve years old.

كإسم جمع . years في المثال السابق أتت كلمة

Hazem is a twelve-year-old boy.

لاحظ أن year في المثال السابق أتت كصفة لذا لم تجمع ولذلك وضعت شرطة قبلها وبعدها.

### How to write a letter

### طريقة كتابة الخطاب:

العنوان address	رقم المنزل, اسم الشارع 5 Nour street, اسم المدينة Cairo
التاريخ date	20 / 10 / 2013
Dear المرسل إليه ,	تحية البداية
- I'm pleased to write to you this letter. - I'm happy to write to you. - How are you and your family?	Start بداية الموضوع يسعدني الكتابة لك كيف أنت والعائلة ؟
- I want to tell you that... - I'd like to invite you to.... - I thank you for....	body جسم الخطاب أود إخبارك بـ..... أود دعوتك على .. أشكرك على ..
- My best wishes to you. - Write to me soon. - See you soon.	end خاتمة الخطاب تمنياتي الطيبة لك . اكتب لي قريبا أراك قريبا .
finishing تحية النهاية	المخلص لك , Yours, بكل الحب , Love ,
signature التوقيع	اسم المرسل

## Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

- 1- What can Farid lift easily ? - A .....  
 a) chair                      b) plastic ruler              c) pencil
- 2- What can Farid bend ? - A .....  
 a) Pencil                      b) Car                      c) Plastic ruler
- 3- Can Farid bend a pencil ?  
 a) Yes, he can.              b) No, he can't.              c) No, he couldn't.
- 4- Can Farid lift a car ?  
 a) Yes, he can.              b) Yes, he does.              c) No, he can't.

### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

- Doctor : Hello Hassan. What's the (1) .....
- Maher : I (2) ..... my back.
- Doctor : When did you do this?
- Maher : It started after lifting some weights.
- Doctor : Did you (3) ..... your knees and lift the weight carefully?
- Maher : Yes, I always do that when I lift (4) .....

### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- a) Mona : ..... ?  
 Sara : You can stretch a jumper.  
 Mona : What can you hold, air or a ruler?  
 Sara : You can hold a ruler.
- b) Doctor : Did you stretch your arms before you lifted the weights?  
 Ali : No, I didn't.  
 Doctor : Remember that it is .....

### 4- Read the following , then answer the questions:

Here are some things you should do to protect yourself. When you have got a headache and feel hot, that means that you have got a cold . You should stay in bed, you'll soon feel better. When you hurt your ankle put some ice on it , it won't hurt so much. When your arm hurts and you can't move it , you need to see a doctor at the hospital. Try not to take any medicine by yourself. Ask your doctor first.

#### A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- What will you do if your arm hurts and you can't move it ?  
 2- How can you know that you have a cold?

#### B) Choose the correct answer :

- 3- The word it refers to .....  
 a) arm                      b) ankle                      c) headache                      d) toothache
- 4- Ask your doctor before taking any .....  
 a) ice                      b) cold                      c) hospital                      d) medicine
- 5- When you hurt your ankle put some ..... on it.  
 a) medicine                      b) stay in bed                      c) see a doctor                      d) ice

### 5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c , or d :

- 1- That's a very nice picture! Did you paint it ..... , Amal?  
 a) herself                      b) myself                      c) himself                      d) yourself
- 2- You don't look ..... . What's the matter?

- a) **will**                                      b) **well**                                      c) **feel**                                      d) **better**  
 3- What can you ..... , your ears or your brain? - My ears.  
 a) **touch**                                      b) **stretch**                                      c) **bend**                                      d) **lift**  
 4- The computer turns ..... off after five minutes.  
 a) **it's**                                      b) **its**                                      c) **it**                                      d) **itself**  
 5- I usually use a sunscreen on my .....  
 a) **skin**                                      b) **sink**                                      c) **eye**                                      d) **heart**  
 6- Ahmed ..... in Cairo if he gets the new job.  
 a) **lived**                                      b) **living**                                      c) **lives**                                      d) **will live**  
 7- How do you ..... ? - My stomach hurts.  
 a) **matter**                                      b) **happen**                                      c) **feel**                                      d) **wrong**  
 8- Hisham is painting our house .....  
 a) **his**                                      b) **herself**                                      c) **themselves**                                      d) **himself**  
 9- A frog under water can breath by its ..... **متفوقين**  
 a) **mouth**                                      b) **ear**                                      c) **nose**                                      d) **skin**  
 10- I don't need any help, thank you. I can do it .....  
 a) **me**                                      b) **mine**                                      c) **my**                                      d) **myself**  
 11- Could you dress ..... when you were two years old?  
 a) **myself**                                      b) **you**                                      c) **your**                                      d) **yourself**  
 12- Amir hurt ..... ankle.  
 a) **himself**                                      b) **his**                                      c) **he**                                      d) **has**  
 13- If you don't bend your knees , you will hurt ..... back .  
 a) **yourself**                                      b) **your**                                      c) **you're**                                      d) **you**  
 14- Stand on one leg. Don't bend ..... knees.  
 a) **yourself**                                      b) **you**                                      c) **your**                                      d) **yourself**  
 15- If you stay in bed, you'll soon feel .....  
 a) **letter**                                      b) **matter**                                      c) **better**                                      d) **butter**  
 16- ..... your knees and lift the weight carefully.  
 a) **Hold**                                      b) **Stretch**                                      c) **Hurt**                                      d) **Bend**  
 17- Stretch your legs ..... of you.  
 a) **behind**                                      b) **in front**                                      c) **middle**                                      d) **straight**  
 18- Manal fell and ..... her arm.  
 a) **bent**                                      b) **broke**                                      c) **hold**                                      d) **lifted**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Most people usually need to wearing glasses.  
 2- Well it be cold if you go to England ?  
 3- What's the manner ? – I have got toothache.  
 4- A eighty-year-old woman made this cake.  
 5- I read a book if I finish my homework.                                      6- My uncle hurts.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " Before playing sports "**

You may use these words: ( **touch – knees – lift – arms – hold / behind** )

It's important to do to do some exercises before you play sports, here are some ideas.

.....  
 .....  
 .....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

Hassan : What can you bend , a plastic ruler or a pencil?

Farid : I can bend a plastic ruler.

Hassan : What can you lift easily, a chair or a car?

Farid : I can lift a chair easily.

## General Test on Unit

14

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

- 1- What does exercise make with the heart?  
 a) **Hears well**                      b) **Thinks clearly**    c) **Beats faster**
- 2- Why is exercise good for brain ? – Because it helps you to .....  
 a) **stay strong**                      b) **beat faster**                      c) **think clearly**
- 3- Is exercise bad for you?  
 a) **Yes, it is.**                      b) **No, it isn't.**                      c) **No, it doesn't.**
- 4- Is exercise good for the brain?  
 a) **Yes, it is.**                      b) **No, it isn't.**                      c) **Yes, it does.**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Doctor : What (1) ..... to you , Ahmad ?  
 Ahmad : I (2) ..... my ankle  
 Doctor : How did it happen ?  
 Ahmad : I (3) ..... when I was playing football .  
 Doctor : Did you put some (4) ..... on it ?  
 Ahmad : No, I didn't .

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) **Doctor** : .....?  
 Ali : I ate lunch at a restaurant and now I've got a stomach-ache.  
**Doctor** : If you take this medicine, you'll feel better .
- 2) **Nadia** : I think I've got a cold.  
**Doctor** : If you .....  
 Nadia : Thank you doctor for your advice.

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

There are many ways to get fit and healthy without going to the gym or paying money. Here are some ideas: Walking is a healthy exercise which can make you fit and become a daily exercise. Try cycling to school, work or university .It makes your legs stronger. 15 minutes of jogging around the block you live in, can increase your fitness level. Playing a team sport like football, basketball or volleyball is a great exercise, and it is often more enjoyable when you're with a group of friends.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- How can playing a team sport become more enjoyable?  
 2- Give a suitable title to the passage .

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- ..... around your block increases your fitness level.  
 a) **Playing at sports team**    b) **Jogging**    c) **Cycling**                      d) **Walking**
- 4- Playing in a ..... sport is a great exercise.  
 a) **fitness**                      b) **healthy**                      c) **team**                      d) **daily**

- 5- Going to school by ..... makes your legs stronger.  
 a) **car**                                      b) **bike**                                      c) **ferry**                                      d) **bus**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- I was running for the bus and I fell. I hurt ..... ankle.  
 a) **myself**                                      b) **mine**                                      c) **my**                                      d) **me**
- 2- Unless you wake up early, you ..... late for school.  
 a) **will**                                      b) **will be**                                      c) **be**                                      d) **being**
- 3- Did you look at ..... in the mirror?  
 a) **yourself**                                      b) **your**                                      c) **you**                                      d) **yours**
- 4- You should have an eye ..... every year.  
 a) **exam**                                      b) **work**                                      c) **team**                                      d) **test**
- 5- Look! He is so strong . He can ..... the coin  
 a) **hold**                                      b) **stretch**                                      c) **touch**                                      d) **bend**
- 6- The brain, back , heart and ..... are parts of the body.  
 a) **headache**                                      b) **glasses**                                      c) **skin**                                      d) **earphones**
- 7- ..... I was young , I had fewer books .  
 a) **How**                                      b) **Unless**                                      c) **If**                                      d) **When**
- 8- What will your parents say ..... you do well in your exams?  
 a) **but**                                      b) **if**                                      c) **and**                                      d) **so**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- If I do well in my exams, my parents says "well done!"  
 2- She have got a headache.                                      3- The dog ate food himself .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " Why did my ankle hurt ? "**

You may use these words:

( **exercise / before – touch / toes – forget – that's why – put / ice** )

Yesterday I was playing tennis after school when I hurt my ankle .

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- Where did the Iron Man make the fire ?  
 a) **Around him.** b) **On the sun.** c) **In Australia.** d) **From the desert to the sea.**
- 2- The dragon was as big as Australia but, the Iron Man was as big as .....  
 a) **the tree**                                      b) **the sun**                                      c) **the moon**                                      d) **the dragon**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What did Hogarth decide to do to the Australian people ?  
 2- What did the Iron Man do when Hogarth asked him for help ?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

**Exercise is good for you. It makes the heart beat faster. It's also good for the brain, because exercise helps you to think clearly.**



# Unit 15

# Health and safety

# الصحة و الأمان

## Aims of the unit

- 1- Read a leaflet about safety in the kitchen
- 2- Listen to people asking for and offering help
- 3- Use can, can't, must, mustn't for permission and obligation
- 4- Write an email offering help
- 5- Ask for and offering help

## Lessons 1 & 2

safety	الأمان	German	ألماني - اللغة الألمانية
health	صحة	grass	عشب
safe	آمن	blouse	بلوزة
lid	غطاء	groups	مجموعات
oven	فرن البوتجاز	noise	ضوضاء
gloves	جوانتي - قفاز	during	أثناء
pan	طاسة	until	حتى
sleeves	أكمام	fire	حريق - نار
towel	فوطية	still	مازال
cooker	بوتجاز - موقد	electric	كهربى
kitchen	مطبخ	burning	إحتراق

### Regular verbs

roll up , ed , ed	يلف - يشمر	dry , ied , ied	يجفف
cook , ed , ed	يطهو	burn , ed , ed / t	يحرق
pour , ed , ed	يصب	talk , ed , ed	يتحدث
finish , ed , ed	ينهى	turn off , ed , ed	يطفىء

### Irregular verbs

catch / caught / caught	يمسك	put on / put / put	يضع على
meet / met / met	يقابل	sleep / slept / slept	ينام

## Text SB page 29

### Stay safe

**Fires often start in kitchens. What can you do to stay safe?**

• Does your mother say you can cook with her? It is good to help in the kitchen, but it is important to be safe. You must roll up long sleeves when you are cooking.

• **You mustn't touch a hot pan in the oven**

without oven gloves or a towel. If you do, you will burn yourself.

• **Sometimes, a pan becomes too hot when you are cooking.**

What must you do? You must turn the cooker off immediately.

• **What must you do if oil catches fire?**

If oil in a pan catches fire, you mustn't try to move the pan. It's too dangerous. You must put a lid on the pan. You mustn't pour water on the fire. The oil will still burn.

• **Remember, electricity can be dangerous.**

You must dry your hands before you touch something electric. Water mustn't go near anything electric!

## Language notes

cooker **بوتجاز** وغالبا يأتي معها حرف الجر **on**

- Turn off the cooker after cooking. - I make tea **on** the cooker.

oven **فرن البوتجاز** وغالبا يأتي معها حرف الجر **in**

- My mother cooks chicken **in** the **oven**.  
- If you feel that the **oven** is very hot, you must turn it off.

stove **بوتجاز سطحي**

- When we go to Alexandria, we take a **stove** to cook **on**.  
- A **stove** is smaller and lighter than a cooker.

catch fire **تمسك به النار**

- What must you do if oil **catches fire**? - The factory **caught fire**.

» on fire = burning : **مشتعل**

- When she woke up , the house was **on fire** .

» **turn on** # **turn off** : **يضيئ # يطفى**

- **Turn on** the light . Don't **turn it off** .

## Grammar

## can, can't, must, mustn't for permission and obligation

يمكننا استخدام **can** للتعبير عن القدرة والنفي منها **can't**.

Mona **can** speak German.

منى **تستطيع** أن تتحدث الألمانية.

I **can** climb a high tree.

أنا **أستطيع** أن اتسلق شجرة عالية .

I **can't** speak French very well.

لا **أستطيع** تحدث الفرنسية جيداً .

لاحظ أن جميع الأفعال بعد **can** أتت في المصدر **inf.**

أيضاً يمكننا استخدام **can** لاعطاء الإذن أو طلب الإذن

My mother says I **can** go to the library after school.

You **can't** walk on the grass in the park.

You **can't** smoke here. There are children.

نستخدم **must** للتعبير عن الضرورة والأهمية لعمل شيء والنفي منها **mustn't**

You **must** do your homework every day. - You **mustn't** be late for school.

You **must** study your lessons regularly. - You are very ill. You **must** see a doctor.

تأتي الأفعال الناقصة ( **must / can** ) مع جميع ضمائر الفاعل

I / we / you / they / he / she / it ( **must – mustn't / can – can't** )

must not = **mustn't**

can not = **can't**

لاحظ أن

لاحظ أن تكوين السؤال مع **can** و **must** يتم استخدامهم استفهام بمعنى هل ...؟

**Can** we go to the park?

**Must** a passenger buy a ticket before getting on the metro ?

**Can** I open the window, please? **Can** they go out after doing homework?

**Can** you drive a car ? هل **تستطيع** أن تقود سيارة ؟

**Must** I roll up my sleeves before cooking? What can he wear to the beach?

Where **must** I put my bag? Where **can** I find the library ?

What languages **can** you speak ? ما اللغات التي **تستطيع** أن تتحدثها ؟

Why **mustn't** I touch anything electric if my hand isn't dried ?

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

- 1- What must you do before you touch something electric ?  
a) **Pour water**                      b) **Move the pan**                      c) **Dry your hand**
- 2- What mustn't go near anything electric ?  
a) **Oil**                                      b) **Water**                                      c) **Pan**
- 3- What mustn't you try to move if oil in a pan catches fire?  
a) **Oven**                                      b) **Pan**                                      c) **Oil**
- 4- What is the passage talking about ?  
a) **Fit and healthy**                      b) **Safety in the kitchen**                      c) **The body**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Dina : Do you always help your mother in the kitchen ?  
 Manar : Yes, I do .  
 Dina : What must you (1) ..... when you cook?  
 Manar : I must roll up my (2) ..... if they are long .  
 Dina : If a pan is too (3) ..... , what's the first thing to do?  
 Manar : I must (4) ..... the cooker.

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) **Mona** : What shouldn't you do if there is a fire in a pan?  
**Nada** : I must move the pan.  
**Mona** : ..... ?  
**Nada** : I must dry my hands.
- 2) **Mayar** : Why are you rolling up your sleeves?  
**Hayam** : Because I want to be safe .  
**Mayar** : What else are you doing in the kitchen to stay safe?  
**Hayam** : .....

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

In the kitchen , heat the oil slowly . Add food carefully to the pot or pan . Always cook with a lid beside the pan. If you have a fire, put the lid carefully over the pan and turn off the cooker. Do not remove the lid because the fire could start again. Never throw water on the fire. If the fire does not go out or you don't feel comfortable put a lid over the pan, get everyone out of your home. Call 180 for emergency.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why mustn't you remove the lid ?
- 2- What must you put beside the pan ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- You mustn't throw ..... on the fire.  
a) **lid**                      b) **oil**                      c) **water**                      d) **pan**
- 4- You must heat oil .....  
a) **accurately**                      b) **oil**                      c) **slowly**                      d) **carefully**
- 5- Always put the lid ..... the pan during cooking.  
a) **on top**                      b) **under**                      c) **far away**                      d) **next to**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c , or d :**

- 1- What ..... he wear to the beach? - He can wear a T-shirt and shorts.  
a) **can**                      b) **can't**                      c) **must**                      d) **mustn't**
- 2- Where ..... I put my bag? - You must put it on the shelf.  
a) **can't**                      b) **can**                      c) **mustn't**                      d) **must**

- 3- ..... I open the window, please? - No, you can't. It's very cold today.  
 a) **Must**                      b) **Can't**                      c) **Can**                      d) **Do**
- 4- In this lesson, we must talk ..... English.  
 a) **at**                      b) **in**                      c) **on**                      d) **with**
- 5- You ..... turn the cooker off immediately if the pan becomes too hot.  
 a) **can**                      b) **can't**                      c) **mustn't**                      d) **must**
- 6- You ..... try to move the pan if oil catches fire.  
 a) **can**                      b) **can't**                      c) **must**                      d) **mustn't**
- 7- You must ..... a lid on the pan.  
 a) **move**                      b) **put**                      c) **touch**                      d) **cover**
- 8- You ..... leave the cooker on all night. It is dangerous.  
 a) **can**                      b) **can't**                      c) **mustn't**                      d) **must**
- 9- We ..... talk when the teacher is talking. We must listen.  
 a) **can**                      b) **can't**                      c) **must**                      d) **mustn't**
- 10- Never add water to a pan with hot oil in it. It could ..... someone.  
 a) **cook**                      b) **touch**                      c) **burn**                      d) **dry**
- 11- Wash your hands and ..... them well with a towel.  
 a) **dry**                      b) **pour**                      c) **do**                      d) **turn off**
- 12- Before leaving the kitchen, turn the ..... off.  
 a) **lid**                      b) **sleeve**                      c) **oven**                      d) **pan**
- 13- Mother is cooking pizza in the .....  
 a) **TV**                      b) **fridge**                      c) **cooker**                      d) **oven**
- 14- ..... up your sleeves.  
 a) **Turn**                      b) **Roll**                      c) **Put**                      d) **Catch**
- 15- You ..... walk on the grass in the park.  
 a) **could**                      b) **mustn't**                      c) **can**                      d) **must**
- 16- You ..... be late for school.  
 a) **can**                      b) **mustn't**                      c) **can't**                      d) **must**
- 17- "Can I watch television, please, Mum?" "No, you .....  
 a) **could**                      b) **don't**                      c) **can**                      d) **can't**
- 18- You ..... touch a hot pan in the kitchen without oven gloves or a towel.  
 a) **mustn't**                      b) **must**                      c) **can**                      d) **should**
- 19- You ..... dry your hands before you touch something electric.  
 a) **can**                      b) **mustn't**                      c) **can't**                      d) **must**
- 20- What ..... you do if oil catches fire? -You must put a lid on the pan.  
 a) **does**                      b) **mustn't**                      c) **can't**                      d) **must**
- 21- You mustn't ..... water on fire. The oil will still burn.  
 a) **pours**                      b) **pouring**                      c) **poured**                      d) **pour**
- 22- If you touch a hot pan, you ..... yourself.  
 a) **burns**                      b) **will burn**                      c) **burned**                      d) **burning**
- 23- Why is the girl ..... up her sleeves?  
 a) **catching**                      b) **pouring**                      c) **rolling**                      d) **drying**
- 24- You must turn the ..... off immediately, if the pan is too hot.  
 a) **gloves**                      b) **pan**                      c) **sleeve**                      d) **cooker**
- 25- If oil in a pan ..... fire, you mustn't try to move the pan.  
 a) **catches**                      b) **puts on**                      c) **meets**                      d) **burns**
- 26- Don't leave the ..... off the jam jar.  
 a) **oven**                      b) **gloves**                      c) **lid**                      d) **pan**
- 27- You can make foods on the cooker faster than in the .....  
 a) **fridge**                      b) **oven**                      c) **towel**                      d) **pot**
- 28- The ..... never has an oven.  
 a) **stove**                      b) **pan**                      c) **sleeve**                      d) **cooker**
- 29- She bought a new blouse to ..... the party.  
 a) **dress**                      b) **put on**                      c) **wear to**                      d) **wear**
- 30- Everybody has two ..... in the middle of their legs.  
 a) **eyes**                      b) **brains**                      c) **backs**                      d) **knees**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Water mustn't go near anything electricity !
- 2- Children can't go to school every day.
- 3- Can't I go to the park? - No, You can't.
- 4- Mona can speak Germany.
- 5- Do you stay safe love this in the kitchen?
- 6- Tom cooked his fingers on a hot frying pan.
- 7- She put the bid on the box.
- 8- You can drive in this country unless you are over eighteen.
- 9- I must eat much chocolate. It's bad for me.
- 10- You can't marry her. She is a nice girl.
- 11- We want see them again if we don't return to the present .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" Stay safe in the kitchen "

You may use these words:

( roll up – touch / hot – mustn't / oven gloves – dry / electric – water / near )

What can you do to stay safe in the kitchen ?

First , .....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

You must dry your hands before touching something electric. Water mustn't go near anything electric! If oil in a pan catches fire, you mustn't move the pan.

**Lessons 3 , 4 & Review**

directions	اتجاهات	rubbish	قمامة / مخلفات
full	ممتلىء	nearly	تقريبا
seat	مقعد ثابت	picnic	نزهة خلويه
an English text.	اختبار لغة إنجليزية	chair	كرسى
of course	بالطبع	dirty	قذر
farmers	مزارعون - فلاحون	chemical	كيميائى
insects	حشرات	fridge	ثلاجه
bilharzia	بلهارسيا ( مرض )	flies	يطير
disease	مرض	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
anywhere	اى مكان	next stop	المحطه التالية
river	نهر	canal	قناه - ترعة
lake	بحيرة	The Nile	نهر النيل
safer to	اكثر امانا أن	right medicine	الدواء المناسب

**Regular verbs**

offer , ed , ed	يعرض	carry , ied , ied	يحمل
kill , ed , ed	يقتل	boil , ed , ed	يغلى
avoid , ed , ed	يتجنب	collect , ed , ed	يجمع
wait , ed , ed	ينتظر	cool , ed , ed	يبرد
call , ed , ed	ينادى	tidy , ied , ied	يرتب
close , d , d	يغلق	practise , d , d	يمارس
advise , d , d	ينصح	visit , ed , ed	يزور
filter , ed , ed	ينقى	cover , ed , ed	يغطي

**Irregular verbs**

find / found / found	يجد	understand/ understood / understood	يفهم
sit down / sat / sat	يجلس	stand / stood / stood	يقف
let / let / let	يدع	catch / caught / caught	يلحق (مواصلات)
hold / held / held	يحمل	feel / felt / felt	يشعر
swim / swam / swum	يعوم	drink / drank / drunk	يشرب
keep / kept / kept	يحفظ	tell / told / told	يخبر
fly / flew / flown	يطير	bring /brought / brought	يحضر

**Some phrasal verbs**

get on / got / got	يصعد على مركبة	get off / got / got	ينزل من مركبة
get to / got / got	يصل إلى	get from / got / got	يأتي من
turn off , ed , ed	يطفىء جهاز	turn on , ed , ed	يشغل
put in / put / put	يضع في	put on / put / put	يضع على
look at , ed , ed	ينظر إلى	offer to , ed , ed	يعرض على
arrive at , d , d	يصل الى مكان صغير	arrive in , d , d	يصل الى مكان عام

**Text SB page 32**

*Clean water for health*

- The Nile and canals are very important for farmers, but many animals and **insects** also use our rivers, canals and lakes. Sometimes this can make the water dirty and it can become unhealthy.
- **Bilharzia**, for example, is a **disease** which people can get from **drinking** or **washing** in **dirty water**. Bilharzia can make you very **ill**. People who have the disease feel very hot and have a bad stomachache. **In the past**, many people got bilharzia. Now, we know how to stop bilharzia and not many people get it. People usually **get better quickly** if they take the **right medicine**.

**How can you help yourself stay healthy?**

- You **mustn't** swim in rivers, canals or lakes and you must never drink water from them.
- You **must** only swim in the sea or in swimming pools which use a chemical to kill diseases.
- **If** you are not sure that drinking water is clean, you need to **boil** it first.
- You **must** always **wash** your hands before you cook or eat.
- You **must** always **wash** fruit and vegetables before you eat them.
- Flies can also carry diseases, so you must cover food or put it in the Fridge .

**Language notes**

get better

يتحسن صحيا

- People usually **get better** quickly if they take the right medicine.

call a taxi

يستدعى تاكسي

- Shall I **call** you a **taxi** at the bus stop?

catch a ( bus – taxi – train .... etc )

يلحق ب ( وسيلة مواصلات )

- hurry up or you won't **catch** the bus.

catch ( fire )

تلتحق به النيران

- If oil in a pan **catches** fire, put a lid on the pan.

catch ( animal ) = **hunt**

يصطاد حيوان

- I watched a TV programme about **catching** animals.

- In summer, I usually go to the river to **catch** fish.

catch ( disease)

يصاب بمرض

- If you swim in a dirty canal , you'll **catch** a disease like bilharzia.

by + v + ing

بواسطة ( لتبين طريقة عمل شيء )

- Mum makes a cake **by mixing** flour , butter and milk.

by the ( place ) = beside

معناها بجوار

- Amal's family had a picnic **by** the river.

- We took a photograph of ourselves **by** the pyramids.

avoid

يتجنب ويليهها فعل + ing أو إسم

- What can we do to help people understand how to **avoid** getting bilharzia?

- Dry your hand to **avoid** electricity in the kitchen.

## Language functions

### Asking for help

طلب المساعدة

Excuse me. .... , please.

معذرة أو عفواً . أريد أو أحتاج ..... من فضلك .

Excuse me, I need to sit down.

Excuse me. I'm getting off at the next stop, but I can't get to the door!

Excuse me , can you open the window ? It's too hot.

**Can you help me + (to) + مصدر ..... , please?**

هل يمكن أن تساعدني في ..... من فضلك ؟

Can you help me to get off the bus, please?

Can you help me do my homework?

Can you help me to carry this box? It's too heavy.

### Offering help

عرض المساعدة

**Can I + مصدر + for you?**

Can I carry these bags for you?

Can I get you something to drink ?

**I'll (help you to + مصدر)**

سوف اساعدك لكي .....

I'll help you to get on the bus.

I'll help you cross the street.

**I can + (مصدر)**

انا استطيع .....

I **can** stand and you sit in my seat.

I **can** call you a taxi if you want.

**Let me + inf.**

اسمح لي .....

Let me help you to the door.

Let me cook lunch for you , mum.

**Shall ( I / we ) + مصدر**

هل يمكنني أو يمكننا .....

لاحظ أن shall تأتي فقط مع الضمائر I / we

Shall I hold your arm , old lady?

Shall I make you a hot drink for you , Grandma ?

Shall we help clean the house today , mum?

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأسماء والأفعال المشتقة منها لها تقريبا نفس النطق ولكن الهجاء مختلف

Noun	Meaning	Verb	meaning
practice	ممارسة	practise	يمارس
advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح

- We must **practise** speaking English every day.
- Every Thursday after school, we have basketball **practice**.
- Your teacher will **advise** you what to do. - Please give me some **advice**.

### Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1- What 's bilharzia ?

- a) **An insect**                      b) **A disease**                      c) **A medicine**

2- How can people get bilharzia ?

- a) **From drinking or washing in dirty water.**  
 b) **From flies which carry diseases.**                      c) **From fruit and vegetables.**

3- What do people who have bilharzia feel ?

- a) **Very cold and have a bad stomachache.**  
 b) **Very hot and have a bad stomachache.**                      c) **Very hot and have a bad toothache.**

4- Where can bilharzia live ? - In .....

- a) **insects**                      b) **flies**                      c) **dirty water**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Hani : It's very (1) ..... tonight.

Fares : Yes. (2) ..... I shut the window?

Hani : Oh yes, please.

Fares : Why (3) ..... you wear a sweater ?

Hani : Oh, I (4) ..... to bring mine. I didn't really expect it to be so cold.

Fares : I can give you one if you don't mind. I have one more in my bag.

Hani : Thank you for your (5) ..... !

Fares : How (6) ..... a cup of hot tea?

Hani : It's a good idea, but it's my treat .

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) **Boy** : Those bags are very heavy! Can I carry them for you?

**Old lady** : .....

**Boy** : I'll help you to get on the bus.

**Old lady** : Thank you.

2) **Old lady** : ..... ?

**Girl** : Of course. Shall I hold your arm? Then you won't fall.

**Old lady** : Thank you for your help!

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

The Nile and canals are very important for farmers, but many animals and insects also use our rivers, canals and lakes. Sometimes this can make the water dirty and it can become unhealthy. So, you mustn't swim in rivers, canals or lakes. If you are not sure that drinking water is clean, you need to boil it first. You must always wash fruit and vegetables before you eat them. Flies can also carry diseases, so you must cover food or put **it** in the fridge.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

1- Why must you cover food or put in the fridge?

2- When do you need to boil water ?



**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- The underlined word it refers to .....  
 a) **fridge**                      b) **water**                      c) **disease**                      d) **food**
- 4- You mustn't ..... in rivers or lakes.  
 a) **boil**                              b) **swim**                              c) **sure**                              d) **carry**
- 5- Flies carry .....  
 a) **vegetables**                      b) **farmers**                      c) **water**                              d) **diseases**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- You mustn't ..... in rivers, canals or lakes .  
 a) **will swim**                      b) **swim**                              c) **swam**                              d) **swimming**
- 2- If you are ..... that drinking water is clean, you need to boil it first.  
 a) **not sure**                              b) **be sure**                              c) **certain**                              d) **sure**
- 3- How can you help ..... stay healthy?  
 a) **you are**                              b) **your**                              c) **yourself**                              d) **you**
- 4- Bilharzia is a ..... which people can get from swimming or washing in dirty water.  
 a) **canal**                              b) **disease**                              c) **medicine**                              d) **pool**
- 5- Water is safer to drink if you ..... it.  
 a) **pour**                              b) **wash**                              c) **boil**                              d) **cool**
- 6- Shall I ..... you a taxi at the bus stop?  
 a) **help**                              b) **call**                              c) **carry**                              d) **swim**
- 7- You must only swim in the sea or in swimming pools which use a ..... to kill diseases.  
 a) **flies**                              b) **medicine**                              c) **chemical**                              d) **bilharzia**
- 8- We ..... find our school bags.  
 a) **aren't**                              b) **mustn't**                              c) **doesn't**                              d) **can't**
- 9- Where can you ..... a bus? - At a bus stop.  
 a) **hold**                              b) **catch**                              c) **boil**                              d) **carry**
- 10- You must ..... drink water from canals or lakes.  
 a) **usually**                              b) **sometimes**                              c) **always**                              d) **never**
- 11- Make sure that drinking water is safe by ..... it for 1 minute.  
 a) **sea or in swimming pools**                              b) **filtering or boiling**  
 c) **filter or boil**                              d) **canals or lakes**
- 12- Water can become unhealthy when animals and ..... use it.  
 a) **insects**                              b) **sleeves**                              c) **plants**                              d) **cars**
- 13- Bilharzia is a ..... which people can get from swimming or washing in dirty water.  
 a) **canal**                              b) **disease**                              c) **medicine**                              d) **pool**
- 14- Water is safer to drink if you ..... it.  
 a) **pour**                              b) **wash**                              c) **boil**                              d) **cool**
- 15- It is important to cover food because ..... are very dirty insects.  
 a) **animals**                              b) **plants**                              c) **scales**                              d) **flies**
- 16- You must always ..... your hands before you cook or eat.  
 a) **hold**                              b) **help**                              c) **carry**                              c) **wash**
- 17- Flies can also carry ..... , so you must cover food or put it in the fridge.  
 a) **bilharzia**                              b) **diseases**                              c) **chemicals**                              c) **insects**
- 18- Excuse me, I need to ..... . There isn't anywhere to sit.  
 a) **get off**                              b) **get on**                              c) **sit down**                              c) **stand up**
- 19- You must always wash fruit and vegetables ..... you eat them.  
 a) **after**                              b) **before**                              c) **during**                              c) **now**
- 20- If you ..... water, it will be safer to drink.  
 a) **stand**                              b) **carry**                              c) **keep**                              d) **boil**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- You must always keep food away off flies.

- 2- Flies can also carry diseases, **but** you must cover food or put it in the fridge.  
 3- What does the woman **offers** to do on the bus?  
 4- The teacher told the children to sit **up** .  
 6- These insects can **boil** diseases.                      7- The bag is **to** heavy to carry.  
 8- You **mustn't** understand an English text. It's hard.  
 9- You **mustn't** eat fruit and vegetables **if** you wash them well first.  
 10- **Mounuir** family had a picnic by the river.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**                      " **Helping my grandmother** "

You may use these words:

( **broke / arm - visited / last weekend - shopping for her - help / garden - cooked** )

I was sorry to hear that my grandmother was ill . .....

.....  
 .....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

Bilharzia is a disease which people can get from drinking or washing in dirty water. People who have bilharzia feel very hot and have a bad stomachache.

**General Test on Unit 15**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :**

- 1- What are ways of transports does the passage talk about ?  
 a) **Train and plane.**                      b) **Metro and bus.** c) **Taxi and ferry.**  
 2- Who do you offer your seat to ?  
 a) **Young people**                      b) **Children**                      c) **The elderly**  
 3- Why must you do that ?  
 a) **To show your respect for them .**                      b) **To get better quickly.**  
 c) **To travel around the city.**  
 4- Is it a great way to show your respect for the elderly ?  
 a) **No, it isn't.**                      b) **Yes, it is.**                      c) **Yes, it was.**

**2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Ali** : How can we help to keep the (1)..... in our rivers, canals and lakes clean?  
**Mai** : We can stop animals from using them. We can collect (2)..... from them.  
**Ali** : What can we do to help people understand how to avoid getting (3).....?  
**Mai** : We can make posters, teach children in schools about it, etc.  
**Ali** : What other ways can you think of to stay healthy?  
**Mai** : We can exercise and eat (4)..... food.

**3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1)        **Man**                      : .....
- Boy**                      : Sorry. I'll move my bag. It's too heavy.
- Man**                      : Let me help you.
- Boy**                      : Thank you for your help.
- 2) **Grandmother**        : Can you close the window, please? I'm cold.
- Manar**                      : Of course, ..... ?
- Grandmother**        : A cup of coffee with milk, please.

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

My name is Samar. I'm 26 years old. I'm from Tanta . Last Friday I heard that my grandmother's arm broke . I was sorry to hear that , so I decided to help her. She lives in El Mahalla El Kubra . On Saturday I was with her in her house . First, I cooked for her because she couldn't. Then, I did the shopping for her. After that, I helped in the garden because I know she loves **it** very much. Finally, she thanked me and I'll go to her again after one week.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why was Samar sorry ?
- 2- What did Samar help her grandmother in ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- Samar's grandmother lives in ..... .  
a) **Banha**                      b) **Cairo**                      c) **Tanta**                      d) **El Mahalla El Kubra**
- 4- Samar is ..... years old.  
a) **twenty two**                      b) **twenty sixth**                      c) **26<sup>th</sup>**                      d) **twenty six**
- 5- The underlined word it refers to the ..... .  
a) **cooking**                      b) **garden**                      c) **arm**                      d) **shopping**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- Could you help me ..... my homework ?  
a) **did**                      b) **does**                      c) **do**                      d) **doing**
- 2- Please, give me some ..... .  
a) **advices**                      b) **advising**                      c) **advise**                      d) **advice**
- 3- They ..... tennis every Saturday.  
a) **practising**                      b) **practice**                      c) **practise**                      d) **advice**
- 4- If oil in a pan ..... fire, put a lid on the pan.  
a) **will catch**                      b) **caught**                      c) **catch**                      d) **catches**
- 5- You can cook food on ..... .  
a) **a canal**                      b) **a cooker**                      c) **an oven**                      d) **a fridge**
- 6- You ..... bring a small bottle, but you can't bring a big one.  
a) **mustn't**                      b) **must**                      c) **can**                      d) **can't**
- 7- I must ..... my room, but I've got a lot of homework to finish!  
a) **carry**                      b) **put**                      c) **cover**                      d) **tidy**
- 8- You ..... cross the road here. It isn't allowed.  
a) **can**                      b) **mustn't**                      c) **could**                      d) **must**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Every Thursday after school, we have basketball practise.
- 2- Shall make I you a hot drink ?
- 3- Roll up the long sleeves of yourself shirt when you are cooking.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" How can you help yourself stay healthy? "

You may use these words:

( **swim / swimming pools – boil – wash hands – wash fruits – flies / cover** )

You mustn't swim in rivers, canals or lakes .....  
.....  
.....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- The dragon had two large wings and a long ..... .  
a) **tail**                      b) **wing**                      c) **space rocket**                      d) **star**
- 2- The dragon ..... on Australia!  
a) **found**                      b) **laughed**                      c) **heard**                      d) **landed**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why couldn't the people destroy the dragon?
- 2- Why do you think that Hogarth thought the Iron Man could help?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

When you are traveling by bus or metro offer your seat to an elderly person. This is a great way to show your respect for the elderly.

## Unit 16

## Modern technology

## التكنولوجيا الحديثة

## Aims of the unit

- 1- Read about the history of mobile phones.
- 2- Listen to a conversation in a computer shop
- 3- Use (not) as ... as ... ; more/less than; the most/least.
- 4- Write a text about new technology
- 5- Make comparisons

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

modern	حديث	camera	كاميرا
technology	تكنولوجيا	internet	الانترنت
different	مختلف	heavier	أثقل
light	ضوء / خفيف	larger	أكبر
difficult	صعب	lighter	أخف
battery	بطارية	big	كبير
computer engineer	مهندس كومبيوتر	useful	مفيد / نافع
text message	رسالة نصية	radio	راديو / مذياع
smaller	أصغر	laptop	كومبيوتر محمول
colour screens	شاشات ملونة	opinion	رأى
voicemail	بريد صوتي	chocolate	شيكولاتة
the way	الطريقة	spring	الربيع
email	بريد إلكتروني	rainy	ممطر
popular	محبوب	sunny	مشمس
photographs	صورة فوتوغرافية	comfortable	مريح
the least	الأقل	Canada	كندا
the UK	المملكة المتحدة / بريطانيا	surprised	مندعش
mechanical	ميكانيكي	is considered	يعتبر
calculating	حساب	electrical	كهربائي
machines	آلات	a call	نداء / إتصال
both	كلاهما	the same	نفس الشيء
change	تغيير	New York	نيويورك

## Regular verbs

weigh ,ed , ed	يزن	last ,ed , ed	يستمر / يدوم
start ,ed , ed	يبدأ	show ,ed , ed	يعرض / يوضح

## Irregular verbs

make/made / made	يصنع / يجعل	send /sent / sent	يرسل
speak / spoke / spoken	يتحدث	take / took / taken	يأخذ

## Text SB page 36

## Mobile phones

In April 1973, a man called **Martin Cooper** made the first call on a **mobile phone** in New York, USA. People were **surprised** to see a man talking on the phone while he was walking in the street!

The mobile phone he was using was very **different** from today's mobiles. **Modern phones** often weigh **less than 100 grams**. Early mobiles were not as light as phones today; **they weighed** about one kilogram. They were big too, so they were more **difficult** to **carry around**. **The battery** also didn't **last as long as** it does today: it lasted only one hour!

In December 1992, a computer engineer sent the **world's first text message**. Also in the 1990s, phones became **smaller** and **lighter**, with colour screens, a **camera** and **voicemail**. For some people, the size and colour of the phone was **as important as** the way it worked.

Then, in 2003, people started making phones that could **send emails**. These became **the most popular** mobile phones.

Today's phones can take **photographs** that are as good as pictures from the best cameras. People can also use their phones to make and **show films** and use the **internet**. For some people, speaking on a mobile phone **is the least important** of its uses!

## Language notes

In my opinion, من وجهة نظري / فى رأى ( يستخدم للتعبير عن الرأى )

- **In my opinion**, winter is better than summer.

early ( adj.) قديم / أول / مبكر ( صفة لوصف شىء قديم )

- **Early** mobiles were not as light as phones today.

- Some of the **early** computers were as big as a room!

carry around. يحمل متجولاً بـ

- Early mobile phones were more difficult to **carry around**.

- I shouldn't **carry around** a lot of money.

only ( adj. & adv. ) فقط صفة إذا اتت قبل الإسم وظرف إذا اتت بعد الفعل

- The battery lasted **only** one hour! ( adv.)

- I was the **only** person on the train. ( adj.)

text message رسالة نصية

- I sent Hassan a **text message** on the mobile.

voicemail بريد صوتى

- You use **voicemail** to leave a message on a phone.

- I'll leave Ahmad a **voicemail** because his mobile is off.

email بريد إلكترونى

- My phone can send **emails**.

- When you want to send someone a message on a computer, send an **email**.

popular (adj.) محبوب / شائع

- Koshari is a **popular** dish in Egypt.

photograph

صورة مأخوذة بكاميرا

- I take photographs with the camera on my phone.

picture

صورة مأخوذة بكاميرا أو مرسومة

- I take **pictures** with the camera on my phone. - Noha painted a nice **picture**.

surprised (adj.)

مندهش

- People were **surprised** when they saw the Iron Man.

last (v.)

يدوم / يستمر

- The film **lasted** two hours.

- The batteries in old mobile phones didn't **last** very long.

### Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :

1- When was the first message in the world sent ?

a) 1991

b) 1992

c) 1993

2- Who sent the first message in the world ?

a) **Martin Cooper**

b) **Richard Jarvis**

c) **Neil Papworth**

3- What was the message sent from and to ?

a) **Computer to mobile**

b) **Mobile to computer**

c) **Mobile to mobile**

4- What was the message?

a) **Thank you**

b) **Happy birthday**

c) **Merry Christmas**

#### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

Hana : Why were the first mobile phones not easy to carry around ?

**Sara** : They were heavier and larger (1)..... today's phones.

Hana : What important (2)..... happened in 2003 ?

**Sara** : People started making phones that could send (3)..... .

Hana : What can some mobile phones do today ?

**Sara** : Some mobile phones can take (4)..... , make and show films and have the internet.

#### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1) Hani : .....

**Sami** : In my opinion, text messages are more important than games.

Hani : I agree with you.

2) Ali : Why were the first mobile phones not easy to carry around?

**Amir** : .....

Ali : How heavy is your mobile phone?

**Amir** : It weighs about 120 grams.

#### 4. Read the following , then answer the questions:

Everyone has a mobile phone these days. Everywhere you go, you'll see the latest mobile phone models. Mobile phones have completely changed. You can make calls, send text messages, read emails, play games and take photographs. Today, the mobile phone has become part of many people's lives. Leaving home without your phone is like leaving without your shoes on. Clearly, the mobile phone is one of the most amazing inventions of this age.

##### A) Answer the following questions :

1- Where can you see the latest mobile phone models?

2- What is leaving home without your mobile like ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- On mobile phones you can play .....  
 a) **text messages**      b) **emails**      c) **games**      d) **photographs**
- 4- Mobile phone is one of the most ..... inventions of this age .  
 a) **completely**      b) **carefully**      c) **boring**      d) **amazing**
- 5- On the mobile phone you can send and read .....  
 a) **emails**      b) **text message**      c) **models**      d) **lives**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- My ..... address is in Hassan@example.com  
 a) **voicemail**      b) **text message**      c) **internet**      d) **email**
- 2- I'm not ..... you.  
 a) **more clever**      b) **as clever as**      c) **clever**      d) **most clever**
- 3- This painting is ..... interesting than that painting.  
 a) **least**      b) **the most**      c) **most**      d) **more**
- 4- The UK is ..... rainy than Canada.  
 a) **the most**      b) **most**      c) **least**      d) **less**
- 5- History is ..... difficult subject .  
 a) **more**      b) **most**      c) **the least**      d) **less**
- 6- I think oranges ..... healthier than rice.  
 a) **has**      b) **are**      c) **is**      d) **was**
- 7- Rice is not as ..... as oranges.  
 a) **sweet**      b) **sweets**      c) **sweetie**      d) **sweetly**
- 8- English is less difficult ..... maths.  
 a) **this**      b) **then**      c) **the**      d) **than**
- 9- Android system makes you ..... games more easily .  
 a) **send**      b) **play**      c) **read**      d) **take**
- 10- The apple is as ..... as the orange.  
 a) **heavily**      b) **heavy**      c) **more heavy**      d) **most heavily**
- 11- We didn't do ..... you did. ( adverbs راجع الظروف )  
 a) **as better as**      b) **as good as**      c) **as well as**      d) **as well so**
- 12- Spain ..... as hot as England.  
 a) **no is**      b) **not is**      c) **is no**      d) **isn't**
- 13- She is ..... beautiful than her sister.  
 a) **least**      b) **the most**      c) **most**      d) **more**
- 14- A train is ..... comfortable form of transport.  
 a) **least**      b) **the most**      c) **most**      d) **more**
- 15- The UK is not ..... Egypt.  
 a) **bigger**      b) **as big as**      c) **big**      d) **biggest**
- 16- People can also use their phones to make and show .....  
 a) **voicemails**      b) **cameras**      c) **films**      d) **text messages**
- 17- ..... phones often weigh less than 100 grams.  
 a) **Surprised**      b) **Ancient**      c) **Old**      d) **Modern**
- 18- When you want to take a photograph on your mobile, use the .....  
 a) **email**      b) **camera**      c) **battery**      d) **voicemail**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- The radio is the less useful thing in our house.
- 2- The UK has most people than Canada.
- 3- " Merry Christmas " was the first voicemail in 1992.
- 4- We can't reach Tom by phone, so send him an internet .
- 5- This book is most boring than the last one.
- 6- This is the more interesting book I have ever read.
- 7- Early mobiles were not as heavier as phones today.

- 8- Are pictures on mobiles the same so pictures on cameras?  
 9- I think a camera on a phone is least important than text messages.  
 10- A laptop is small than a computer.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

**" Mobile phones "**

You may use these words:

( 1973 / Martin – 1992 / text message – 2003 / emails – early / 1 kilogram – now / less 100 )

I think I know a lot about the history of mobile phones.

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

Neil Papworth sent the first text message on December 3, 1992, from computer to the mobile phone of Richard Jarvis. It was "Merry Christmas" .

**Lessons 3 , 4 & Review**

earphones	سماعات أذن	rucksack	شنطة ظهر
keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح	seat	مقعد ثابت
mouse	الفأرة ( للكمبيوتر )	briefcase	حقبية أوراق
mouse mat	قاعدة للفأرة ( بادة )	bag	حقبية
printer	طابعة	thief / thieves	لص / لصوص
screen	شاشة	possessions	ممتلكات
difference	إختلاف	next to	بجانب
similarities	تشابهات	behind	خلف
unlike	على عكس	in front of	أمام
price	سعر	tourist	سائح
tablet	هاتف لوحي	public	عام / العامة
laptop	كومبيوتر محمول	grey = gray	رصاصي
main	اساسي	comfortable	مريح
DVD	أقراص مدمجة	all times	كل الأوقات / العصور
interested in	مهتم بـ	documents	وثائق
items	عناصر / بنود	flag	علم
large	كبير / ضخم	thin	رفيع / نحيف

**Regular verbs**

close , d , d	يغلق	open , ed , ed	يفتح
belong to , ed , ed	يخص	print , ed , ed	يطبع
describe , d , d	يصف	change , d , d	يغير
decide , d , d	يقرر	interest , ed , ed	يهتم

**Irregular verbs**

take care / took / taken	يعتني	leave / left / left	يترك
fall / fell / fallen	يقع	steal / stole / stolen	يسرق
find / found / found	يجد	write / wrote / written	يكتب



## Text SB page 39

## Taking care of your possessions

Always keep your possessions with you. Don't leave things on seats, for example. It is easy to leave your possessions on the bus or train if you cannot see them. **Thieves** are people who take things that don't belong to them. They are usually **interested in** the **most** expensive things that you have. So when you are out, leave these things at home! Your home is the least dangerous place for your possessions. Never leave your bag or **rucksack** open. You must keep it closed, so your possessions will not fall on the floor. Hold your bag or rucksack in front of you, so that it is **not as easy** for thieves to take things from it. If you have an expensive camera or phone with you, put it inside your bag or **rucksack** . It will be safer there.

## Language notes

looking for + noun

أبحث عن

- I'm looking for a new **computer**.

take care

يعتنى بـ

- You must **take care** of your possessions at all times.

unlike = dissimilar

على عكس - لا يشبهه

- **Unlike** the new radio, the old radio is very heavy.

come with

يأتي في شكل ..... يأتي معه

- This computer is the biggest. It **comes with** a large screen, a keyboard and a mouse, too.

What about ?

ما رأيك في / ماذا عن ؟

- **What about** the laptop? Is it less expensive than the computer?

move around

يتجول

- The laptop isn't as heavy as the computer, so it's much easier to **move around**.

the same

نفس الشيء

- The price is the **same**.- Is the tablet the **same as** the laptop?

similar to

مشابه لـ

- The laptop is **similar to** the tablet.

rucksack

حقيبة ظهر

- The **rucksack** is on the seat next to the girl.- Ahmad carries a **rucksack** on his back .

steal ( sth. )

يسرق ( ويأتي بعده الشيء المسروق )

- Someone **stole** my new car .

## Language functions

Asking about similarities and differences

➤ Is / are ..... the same as .....?نستخدم **the same as** ويليه اسم او ضمير مفعول للسؤال عن التشابه بين شيئين💧 **Is the screen** on the computer **the same size as** the screen on the laptop?💧 Are these flowers the same **price** as those ones ?💧 Is this car the same **speed** as that car ?لاحظ في الأمثلة السابقة وضع الاسم **speed / size / price** بين **same ..... as**

➤ What's the difference between ..... ?

ما هو الاختلاف بين ؟  
عند السؤال عن اختلاف بين شيئين نستخدم:

- ◆ What's the difference between these two TVs?
- ◆ What's the difference between the laptop and the computer?

Talking about similarities and differences

➤ Noun اسم + v.to.be. the same. هناك عدة طرق للتعبير عن التشابه أو الاختلاف بين الأشياء منها:

- ◆ What's the difference between these two TVs?  
The price **is the same**. The size **is the same**. The colour **is the same**.

مفعول أو ضمير مفعول **Noun. اسم + v.to.be + similar to + object.**

- ◆ Are these flowers the same **price** as those ones ?  
Yes, the price of these flowers **is similar to** those ones.
- ◆ What's the difference between Samsung phone and Nokia phone?  
The usage of Samsung **is similar to** Nokia.

➤ Like + اسم أو ضمير مفعول

للتعبير عن التشابه بين الأشياء

- ◆ Like the white car, the black car has a flag on it.  
في المثال السابق تتشابه السيارتين بأن عليهما علم .
- ◆ Like phone B, phone A can send text messages.
- ◆ What's the difference between the laptop and the computer?  
Like the computer, the laptop can play DVDs.

➤ Unlike + اسم أو ضمير مفعول

للتعبير عن عدم التشابه بين الأشياء

- ◆ What's the difference between these two TVs?  
Unlike Sony TV, Toshiba can connect to the internet.  
على عكس تليفزيون سوني , توشيبا يمكنه أن يتصل بالانترنت
- ◆ What's the difference between the laptop and the computer?  
Unlike the computer, the laptop is easy to carry around.

➤ There is a difference between .....

يوجد إختلاف بين .....

في حالة وجود اختلاف بين شيئين يكون الاستخدام كالتالي:

- ◆ What's the difference between the laptop and the computer?
- ◆ There is a difference between the laptop and the computer. The laptop works with a printer just as easily as a computer does.  
يوجد اختلاف بين هاتف سامسونج وهاتف نوکیا . سامسونج يمكنه الدخول الى الانترنت أسرع.

➤ There is no difference between .....

لا يوجد اختلاف

في حالة عدم وجود اختلاف بين شيئين يكون الاستخدام كالتالي:

- ◆ What's the difference between the laptop and the computer?  
There is no difference between the laptop and the computer.

➤ The main difference between .....

الاختلاف الرئيسي بين

في حالة وجود أختلاف جوهري أو رئيسي بين الشيئين نستخدمها كالتالي:

- ◆ What's the difference between Samsung phone and Nokia phone?  
The main difference between the Samsung phone and Nokia phone is that Samsung can be faster on the internet.

**Writing skills**

➤ Too & also & in addition.

تستخدم **too** بعد ضمائر المفعول في الإجابات المختصرة :

- ◆ I'm pleased to meet you .  
وأنا أيضاً **Me , too** .

تستخدم **also** قبل الفعل الأساسي ، أو بعد **v. to be** في وسط الكلام .

- ◆ My father **also works** on Fridays .  
◆ He **is also** a very good teacher .

تأتي أيضاً **also** بعد الفعل الناقص أو الفعل المساعد :

♦ She **can also** speak French .

♦ I **am also** reading stories .

♦ My uncle has got a lorry .

♦ **in addition** عند ذكر معلومة إضافية يمكننا استخدام  
♦ **In addition** , he has three cars .

### Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1- What can you use to write an email ?

- a) **The mouse**                      b) **The screen**                      c) **The keyboard**

2- What can you use to change something ?

- a) **The screen**                      b) **The keyboard**                      c) **The mouse**

3- What must you put in printer ?

- a) **Earphones**                      b) **Mat**                      c) **Paper**

4- What can you use to print an email?

- a) **The printer**                      b) **The keyboard**                      c) **The mouse**

#### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

**Ayman** : Which is bigger, the (1)..... or the computer?

**Assistant** : The computer is bigger.

**Ayman** : Is the laptop (2)..... expensive than the computer?

**Assistant** : No, they are the (3)..... price .

**Ayman** : Is the screen on the computer the same size as the screen on the laptop?

**Assistant** : No, the screen on the computer is (4)..... .

#### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1) **Hani** : What can't you do with the tablet?

**Ali** : You can't play a DVD on it.

**Hani** : ..... ?

**Ali** : Yes, you can use it with all three kinds of computer .

2) **Mai** : Why is it a good idea to close a bag or rucksack when you are on a bus?

**Nora** : .....

**Mai** : Should you have your rucksack next to you, or in front of you?

**Nora** : I should have it in front of me.

#### 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, many people have computers in their homes. You can also find them in many schools and libraries. This was very different just 50 years ago when it was very difficult to buy a computer. What is the difference between computers today and computers in the past? Modern computers are not as large as the first computers. Some of the early computers were as big as a room! Today's computers are much faster, too. In addition, they are less expensive than the first computers so it is easier to buy them.

##### A) Answer the following questions :

1- What about the size of computers today ?

2- Why is it easier to buy computers now?

##### B) Choose the correct answer :

3- Early computers were as big as a .....

- a) **bus**                      b) **room**                      c) **library**                      d) **school**

4- Today's computers are less .....

- a) **expensive**                      b) **modern**                      c) **easier**                      d) **faster**

5- It was very ..... to buy a computer 50 years ago.

- a) **fast**                      b) **different**                      c) **easy**                      d) **difficult**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- This apple is ..... as that apple .  
a) **the same red**      b) **red**      c) **same red**      d) **as red**
- 2- I like Egypt. My father likes Egypt, ..... .  
a) **too**      b) **also**      c) **in addition**      d) **so**
- 3- The laptop is ..... to the computer  
a) **like**      b) **unlike**      c) **the same**      d) **similar**
- 4- I like eating falafel, ..... my friends who mostly like ful medames.  
a) **different**      b) **similar**      c) **unlike**      d) **like**
- 5- Farid can speak English . ..... , he can speak German.  
a) **Also**      b) **Either**      c) **Too**      d) **In addition**
- 6- The apple and the orange are ..... in taste.  
a) **as different as**      b) **the same**      c) **similar**      d) **different**
- 7- We've got some chicken . ..... , we've got green salad .  
a) **In addition**      b) **But**      c) **So**      d) **Too**
- 8- I enjoy Saidi music. But I ..... enjoy Sawahli music.  
a) **also**      b) **either**      c) **too**      d) **in addition**
- 9- A ..... is a person who takes things that don't belong to him.  
a) **nurse**      b) **chef**      c) **doctor**      d) **thief**
- 10- The laptop is ..... to the tablet.  
a) **similar**      b) **same**      c) **like**      d) **such as**
- 11- Your home is the least dangerous place for your ..... .  
a) **figures**      b) **shopping**      c) **possessions**      d) **works**
- 12- He has some expensive items on show, which a thief might try to.....  
a) **fall**      b) **decide**      c) **steal**      d) **print**
- 13- You can see pictures and writing on a computer ..... .  
a) **mouse mat**      b) **screen**      c) **mouse**      d) **printer**
- 14- There is no ..... between the two cars.  
a) **the same**      b) **different**      c) **difference**      d) **similar**
- 15- ..... the white car, the black car has a flag on it.  
a) **Difference**      b) **Different**      c) **Like**      d) **Similar**
- 16- The black car has more doors ..... the white car.  
a) **thin**      b) **the**      c) **then**      d) **than**
- 17- The price of the white car is ..... the price of the black car.  
a) **similar to**      b) **the same**      c) **such**      d) **difference**
- 18- I think the laptop is the best one for me. I'll ..... that.  
a) **send**      b) **buy**      c) **sell**      d) **play**
- 19- When you are out, leave your possessions at .....!  
a) **busy places**      b) **markets**      c) **public transport**      d) **home**
- 20- If you want to listen to something without other people hearing ,use..... .  
a) **earphones**      b) **ears**      c) **mouse**      d) **keyboard**
- 21- Put some ..... in the printer and then you can use it.  
a) **paper**      b) **ears**      c) **mouse**      d) **keyboard**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- This seat is modern and comfortable, in addition.
- 2- Hala hasn't got a new dictionary. Samy has got a new dictionary, too.
- 3- Noura speaks French. Hani too speaks French.
- 4- Like the new radio, the old radio is very heavy.
- 5- The laptop is same to the computer, but it's not as fast as the computer.
- 6- Mona likes English and she likes maths, also .
- 7- You need to learn where the letters are on the mouse .
- 8- There are many similar between the two cars.
- 9- The size of the black car is two times as much as the price of the white car.

- 10- You can put important documents in a **keyboard**.  
 11- The **earphones** helps you to move things around the screen .  
 12- A **voicemail** is a message which someone sends using the internet.

### 7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :

You may use these words: ( **expensive / home – don't leave – never leave / open – expensive / inside – must close** ) Always keep your possessions with you.

.....  
 .....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

To write an email, first, use the keyboard to write it. To change something, use the mouse. To print this email, use the printer, after putting paper in it.

## General Test on Unit 16

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :

- 1- Is the old radio heavy ?  
 a) **No, it isn't.**                      b) **Yes, it is.**                      c) **Yes, it does.**
- 2- What's the main difference between the old TV and the modern TV ?  
 a) **Colour**                              b) **Price**                              c) **Size**
- 3- Is the old TV thin ?  
 a) **No, it isn't.**                      b) **Yes, it is.**                      c) **Yes, it does.**
- 4- What's the main difference between the old radio and the modern radio ?  
 a) **Size**                                  b) **Price**                                  c) **Colour**

### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

- Amir : How can we write this email ?  
 Waleed : Use the (1)..... and write the message here.  
 Amir : How can I change something after writing ?  
 Waleed : Use the (2)..... . Point it at a word on the screen and you can change it.  
 Amir : What do we need to (3)..... this email ?  
 Waleed : Put some (4)..... in the printer and press copy.

### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1) Rawan : ..... ?  
 Roayna : No, Canada is not as sunny as Egypt.  
 Rawan : Is it sunny in the UK like in Canada ?  
 Roayna : No, Canada is less sunny than the UK.
- 2) Man : What's the difference between these two TVs?  
 Shop assistant : The blue TV is similar to the black TV. They are both very light.  
 Man : Is the red TV the same as the other two TVs?  
 Shop assistant : No, .....

### 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Hazem. Last Friday, I went to a mobile shop near my house. I saw two phones, but I couldn't decide which one to buy. They were Sony and Samsung. Like Sony, Samsung can send text messages. It also has voicemail. The price is the same. Unlike Samsung, Sony comes in four different colours. Unlike Samsung, Sony does not have a camera. Finally I decided to buy Samsung because it is fast on the internet.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Which phone did Hazem buy ?
- 2- Which phone comes in four different colours?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- The price of the two phones is .....  
 a) **cheap**                      b) **good**                      c) **different**                      d) **the same**
- 4- Sony phone doesn't have a .....  
 a) **cheap**                      b) **text message**                      c) **camera**                      d) **voicemail**
- 5- Hazem bought the phone on .....  
 a) **Sunday**                      b) **Friday**                      c) **Thursday**                      d) **Monday**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- Some thieves ..... a lot of money from my rucksack .  
 a) **took care**                      b) **closed**                      c) **kept**                      d) **stole**
- 2- Noha is a good girl. I am a good girl , .....  
 a) **also**                      b) **either**                      c) **too**                      d) **in addition**
- 3- My book is ..... as yours.  
 a) **different**                      b) **similar**                      c) **the same**                      d) **as different as**
- 4- I like chocolate. Nouran ..... chocolate, too.  
 a) **doesn't like**                      b) **don't like**                      c) **like**                      d) **likes**
- 5- This phone can send texts and it has voicemail. .... , it has a camera.  
 a) **In addition**                      b) **Also**                      c) **Too**                      d) **So**
- 6- I can type on the computer with .....  
 a) **earphones**                      b) **keyboard**                      c) **printer**                      d) **mouse mat**
- 7- The main ..... between the laptop and the tablet is that you can't play a DVD on the tablet.  
 a) **different**                      b) **similar**                      c) **difference**                      d) **the same**
- 8- Washington is the capital of the .....  
 a) **UAE**                      b) **UK**                      c) **UN**                      d) **USA**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- The main different between the old radio and the modern radio is the size .
- 2- A suitcase is a bag carried on the back or shoulder.
- 3- I love chocolate. I too love pizza.

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" Computers "

You may use these words: ( **different 50 years ago – early / as big as – now / faster – early / expensive – now / easier** )

Today, many people have computers in their homes.

.....

.....

**8. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Where did the dragon look at while he was saying sorry?  
 a) **The ground**                      b) **The sun**                      c) **The sky**                      d) **The Iron Man's eyes**
2. " Good. You can sing for us," said the .....  
 a) **Iron Man**                      b) **dragon**                      c) **Hogarth**                      d) **people**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

1. "Why did you want to frighten the people?" Who asked this to whom?
2. How was the Iron Man stronger than the dragon?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

- Ali : What's the difference between the old radio and the modern radio?  
 Mai : Unlike the new radio, the old radio is very heavy.  
 Ali : What's the difference between the old TV and the modern TV?  
 Mai : Unlike the old TV, the modern TV is very thin.

# Unit 17 Where things are made

## حيث تصنع الأشياء

### Aims of the unit

- 1- Read a website about what things are made of
- 2- Listen to a conversation about where things are made
- 3- Use made of / made from / made in
- 4- Write an article about where things are made
- 5- Describe objects

### Lessons 1 & 2

materials	مواد خام	all over the world	في كل انحاء العالم
rubber	مطاط - استيكة	boxes	صناديق
tyres	اطارات	hat	قبعة
sandals	صندل	newspaper	جريدة
sizes	احجام	bowl	سلطانية - وعاء
shoes	احذية	pencil case	مقلمة
South Africa	جنوب افريقيا	desk	مكتب خشبي
plastic	بلاستيك	boot	حذاء برقبة
rubbish	قمامة	scissors	مقص
cans	علب صفيح	skirt	جيبية
toys	لعبة اطفال	toy car	عربة لعبة
metal	معادن	sewing machines	ماكينات خياطة
jumper	بلوفر	truck	شاحنة
wool	صوف	chair	كرسي
blankets	بطاطين	Japan	اليابان
warm	دافئ	China	الصين
paper	ورق	objects	اشياء
Brazil	البرازيل	leaves	اوراق شجر
wood	خشب	bird's home = nest	عش الطائر
uses	إستخدامات	newspaper	جريدة
cloth	قماش	What else?	ماذا أيضاً؟

### Regular verbs

recycle , d , d	يعيد تدوير	use , d , d	يستخدم
fill with , ed , ed	يملا	need , ed , ed	يحتاج

### Irregular verbs

know / knew / known	يعرف	make / made / made	يصنع
buy / bought / bought	يشترى	put / put / put	يضع
keep / kept / kept	يحفظ	think / thought / thought	يعتقد- يفكر
see / saw / seen	يرى	wear / wore / wore	يرتدى
drink / drank / drunk	يشترى	do / did / done	يفعل

## Text SB page 41

1. Materials often have many different **uses**. Car **tyres**, **for example**, are made of **rubber**. But did you know that we can **recycle** old car tyres to make **shoes** and **sandals**? These rubber sandals are made in Africa. You can buy them all over the world, in many different **sizes**.
2. We use **plastic bags** to **carry** our shopping home and to put our rubbish in. What else can we do with them? Someone had a great idea: we can make them into **new bags**!
3. People in South Africa use old cans to make **toys**. This **toy** car is made from a **metal** can!
4. When your old **jumper** is too small for you, what can you do with it? Some people use the **wool** from old **jumpers** to make **blankets**. These blankets keep people **warm**. You only need a few large jumpers to make a baby's blanket. How many different jumpers do you think this blanket is made from?

## Language notes

metal	معادن / معدنى
- This toy car is made from a <b>metal</b> can!	( adj. ) معدنى
- Cars are made of <b>metal</b> .	( noun. ) معدن
plastic	بلاستيك / مصنوع من البلاستيك ( بلاستيكي )
- We use <b>plastic</b> bags to carry our shopping.	( adj. )
- Bags are made of <b>plastic</b> .	( noun. )
rubber	مطاط / مطاطى
- The tyre and the sandals are made of <b>rubber</b> .	( noun. )
- These <b>rubber</b> sandals are made in Africa.	( adj. )
wool / woollen	صوف - وبر / مصنوع من الصوف
- The jumper and the blanket are made of <b>wool</b> .	( noun. )
- My <b>woollen</b> socks make my feet warm.	( adj. )
blanket	بطانية
- <b>Blankets</b> keep people warm.	
mat	سجادة / حصيرة
- The cat sat on the <b>mat</b> .	
Sandals	صندل ( تعامل معاملة الجمع )
- Hamed wears <b>sandals</b> instead of shoes. They are more comfortable.	
- Ahmad bought new <b>sandals</b> .	
shoes	أحذية ( تعامل معاملة الجمع )
- Many beautiful <b>shoes</b> and bags are made in Egypt.	
- I can't find the right <b>shoe</b> .	( sing. )
tyre	إطار
- Dad's car has 4 <b>tyres</b> and one spare.	استين ( احتياطي )
recycle	يعيد تدوير / تصنيع
- We can <b>recycle</b> a lot of materials.	



# Grammar

## made of, made from and made in



مصنوع من مادة واحدة ( أو أكثر دون خلط المواد )  
 مصنوع من أكثر من مادة ( بعد خلطهم )  
 مصنوع في ( بلد / مكان )

- ☞ Is that ball **made of** rubber? - No, it isn't. It's **made of** plastic.
- ☞ Windows **are made of** glass and wood . ☞ A chair **is made of** wood
- ☞ My sister has a toy house. It is **made from** old boxes.
- ☞ Most plastics **are made from** oil . ☞ Paper is **made from** wood.
- ☞ Many beautiful shoes and bags are **made in** Egypt.
- ☞ Are computers made in China? ☞ This table **was made in** Damietta.

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :

- 1- What are these toys made from?  
 a) **Wood cans**                      b) **Plastic cans**                      c) **Metal cans**
- 2- Are these toys expensive?  
 a) **Yes, they are.**                      b) **No, they aren't**                      c) **No, it isn't.**
- 3- Who uses cans to make toys ?  
 a) **People in China.**                      b) **People in South Africa.**                      c) **People in the UK.**
- 4- What does the passage talk about ?  
 a) **Recycling**                      b) **Measurements**                      c) **Ancient Egyptians**

### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

Mariam : Is that ball made (1)..... rubber?  
 Walaa : No, it isn't. It's made (2)..... plastic.  
 Mariam : What are these toys made (3)..... ?  
 Walaa : Old boxes.  
 Mariam : Where are these beautiful toys made?  
 Walaa : They are made (4)..... Egypt.

### 3. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1) Hani : ..... ?  
 Sami : Yes, it is made of wood .  
 Hani : It's really good. I want to buy one.
- 2) Nada : Can you make a baby blanket ?  
 Noura : Yes, I can.  
 Nada : How can you make it ?  
 Noura : .....

### 4. Read the following , then answer the questions:

We use plastic bags to carry our shopping home and to put our rubbish in. What else can we do with them? We can make them into new bags. Also when your old jumper is too small for you, what can you do with **it**? Some people use the wool from old jumpers to make blankets. These blankets keep people warm. You only need a few large jumpers to make a baby's blanket . I think we all have old jumpers, so we can use them to make new ideas instead of throwing them away .

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- What are plastic bags used for ? 2- Explain how can you recycle old jumpers.

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

3- The underlines pronoun it refers to a / an .....

- a) **shopping**    b) **plastic bag**    c) **blanket**    d) **old jumper**

4- The blankets keep people .....

- a) **warm**    b) **small**    c) **cold**    d) **happy**

5- What else can we do with plastic bags? .....

- a) **Throwing them**    b) **Making blankets**  
c) **Making them into new bags**    d) **Making a baby's blanket**

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1- The tyre and the sandals are made of .....

- a) **metal**    b) **rubber**    c) **plastic**    d) **wool**

2- The metal bowl is more expensive than ..... bowl.

- a) **plastic**    b) **rubber**    c) **metal**    d) **wool**

3- Gold is a .....

- a) **metal**    b) **wool**    c) **rubber**    d) **plastic**

4- A plastic dish ..... in the oven .

- a) **wears**    b) **keeps**    c) **recycles**    d) **melts**

5- A ..... is made of plastic.

- a) **skirt**    b) **fridge**    c) **ball**    d) **cooker**

6- Mother covered her baby with a soft wool .....

- a) **boot**    b) **blanket**    c) **tyre**    d) **toy car**

7- My feet are cold , so I wear socks made of .....

- a) **metal**    b) **rubber**    c) **plastic**    d) **wool**

8- Salma went to the shoe shop to buy new .....

- a) **shoes**    b) **rubbish**    c) **cans**    d) **toys**

9- Amir likes wearing white socks with his .....

- a) **shirts**    b) **jumpers**    c) **sandals**    d) **skirts**

10- My bike has two .....

- a) **boots**    b) **blankets**    c) **tyres**    d) **boots**

11- Pencil cases can be ..... a lot of materials such as wood or metal.

- a) **made**    b) **made in**    c) **made from**    d) **made of**

12- My sister has a toy house. It is ..... old boxes.

- a) **made of**    b) **made from**    c) **made in**    d) **made**

13- Many beautiful shoes and bags are ..... Egypt.

- a) **made**    b) **made in**    c) **made from**    d) **made of**

14- This desk is made from an old door. It's ..... wood.

- a) **made**    b) **made in**    c) **made from**    d) **made of**

15- This kind of bowl is made ..... China.

- a) **at**    b) **in**    c) **from**    d) **of**

16- Sewing machines are often ..... Japan.

- a) **made of**    b) **made from**    c) **made in**    d) **made**

17- Are many computers made in ..... ?

- a) **wool**    b) **metal**    c) **wood**    d) **Brazil**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1- Scissors are made of rubber .    2- An eraser is made of wood.

3- This jumper is recycle of 80% wool and 20 % cotton .

4- I'm changing my car's boot .    5 - Knives are made in metal .

6- You can make tyres from old cans.    7- Cheese is made of milk.

8- The dress is made in cloth.

9- This box is made from cycled plastic bags.

- 10- Plates are often made on China.      11- The chips are made of potatoes.  
 12- This shirt is made from cotton.  
 13- Do you know how can I recycling plastic bottles?  
 14- I wore sandal at the beach.      15- He wears a sweater made from wool.  
 16- Windows are made from glass.      17- Is it made by Damietta .  
 18- This woman removed her son's shoes and covered him with a can .

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" Recycling "

You may use these words: ( **tyres / sandals and shoes – plastic / new bags – old jumper / baby blanket – metal cans / toys – toys / South Africa** )  
 Materials often have many different uses. ....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

People in South Africa use old cans to make toys. This toy car is made from a metal can. They are cheaper than the toys which are made from plastic.

**Lessons 3 , 4 & Review**

Egypt	مصر	Furniture (sing.)	أثاث (مفرد)
Egyptian	مصرى	petrol	بنزين
Japan	اليابان	countries	دول
Japanese	يابانى	gold	ذهب
Korea	كوريا	a sheep / sheep	خروف / خراف
Korean	كورى	mine	منجم
China	الصين	cow	بقرة
Chinese	صينى	tennis ball	كرة التنس
Brazil	البرازيل	rubber trees	شجر المطاط
Brazilian	برازيلى	Asia	قارة آسيا
USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	blouses	بلوزات
American	أمريكى	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء
paper	ورق	lunch box	صندوق الغداء
wood	خشب	exercise book	كتاب التدريبات
computer	حاسب آلى	school bag	شنطة المدرسة
phones	هواتف	Abu Dhabi	أبو ظبى
cars	سيارات	Alaska	الاسكا
oil	زيت / بتروول	state	ولاية
rice	أرز	blackboard	سبورة سوداء
cotton	قطن	Spain	اسبانيا
leather	جلد	trousers	بنطلون
India	الهند	coat	معطف

**Regular verbs**

describe , d , d  
look at , ed , ed

يصف  
ينظر إلى

answer , ed , ed  
love , d , d

يجيب  
يحب

**Irregular verbs**

think about / thought / thought

يفكر

wear / wore / worn

يرتدى

## Tapescript

Hello. Today we're going to talk about where things **are made**. Think about the **objects** in your house. You can probably **describe** them, but how often do we think about what objects are made of, or the countries they are **made in**?

Think about your favourite book. **What is it like?** **How big is it?** You can answer these questions easily. But do you know where the paper in the book **comes from**?

Most of the world's **paper** is made in the **USA**. A lot of the wood it uses for paper and **furniture** comes from trees in **Brazil**. Many of the computers and phones we use are **Japanese**. Look at the cars on our streets. A lot of our cars are **Chinese** or **Korean**.

But what about things that are made **in Egypt**? Did you know that a lot of the world's **petrol** is made from **Egyptian oil**?

You can also find many **Egyptian** things in other countries. Many **Americans**, **Brazilians** and the **Chinese** love **Egyptian rice**. People also want to buy cotton and leather from **Egypt**. Just think, right now, people in many countries are wearing **cotton clothes** and **leather shoes** and **bags** that **are made** in our country!

## Text SB page 45

Rubber comes from rubber trees. There are many rubber trees in Brazil and also in countries in Africa and Asia. Some rubber is also made from oil. We use rubber for a lot of different things. Tennis balls are made of rubber, as well as some shoes and, of course, the rubbers we use at school.

## Language notes

right now

الآن / في هذه الآونة

- **Right now**, people in many countries are wearing cotton clothes.

as well as +n. Or ger.

بالإضافة إلى ( يليها اسم او فعل مضاف له ing )

- Tennis balls are made of rubber, **as well as** some shoes.

- **As well as** studying, I help mum at home.

come from

يأتي من ( مصدر الشيء )

- Does this beautiful cotton shirt **come from** Egypt?

- Wood **comes from** trees and we use it to make furniture and paper.

oil & petrol

بتروول # بنزين

- Some rubber is also made from **oil**.

- **Oil** is made into **petrol**.

leather

جلد ( مذبوغ )

- **Leather** comes from cows and some shoes and bags are made of it.

## Language functions

Asking about objects السؤال عن الأشياء

**What is it like?**

ما وصفك ل ..... ؟ / ماذا تبدو ..... ؟

- Think about your favourite book. **What is it like?**

- What is the mobile phone like ?

- What is the ball like ?

Where does ..... come from? ؟ ..... ما مصدر ..... / من أين تأتي ؟  
 - Does cotton come from ? - Where does this mobile come from ?  
 - Where does leather come from ?

How ( big / wide / long ....etc ) is it? ما حجمها / عرضها / طولها ... الخ ؟  
 - How big is your favourite book ? - How wide is Amal's bag?  
 - How long is the present? للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية و المقاسات. لاحظ الفرق بين

### Describing objects وصف الأشياء

عند وصف الأشياء هناك عدة طرق كالتالي:

اسم + it's made of + صفة + it's

إنه ..... ومصنوع من .....

- It's **big** and it's made of **plastic**. - It's **small** and it's made of **rubber**.

☞ It's from + ( مكان ) . إنه من .....

- It's from **Egypt**. - It's from **China**. - It's from **Brazil**. - It's from **Japan**.

☞ It's + (nationality) إنه .....

- It's **Egyptian**. - It's **Chinese**. - It's **Brazilian**. - It's **Japanese**.

☞ It's (not) very + صفة . إنه ( ليس ) ..... جداً

- It's not very big. - It's very small.

☞ It's + صفة + مقاس .

- It's **ten metres** high. - It's **50 cm** wide. - It's **11 cm** long.

### Writing skills

يمكنك استخدام اختصارات لبعض الدول. وعلى عكس معظم الدول يمكنك استخدام **the** مع الدول التي بها **إتحاد** أو **متحدة** / **جمهورية** / **مملكة** / **ولاية** / **إمبراطورية** / **إمارة**

الاسم كاملاً	الاختصار	المعنى
the <b>European Union</b>	the EU	الاتحاد الأوروبي
the <b>United Arab Emirates</b>	the UAE	الإمارات العربية المتحدة
the <b>United Kingdom</b>	the UK	المملكة المتحدة ( بريطانيا )
the <b>United States</b> of America	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
the Arab <b>Republic</b> of Egypt	the ARE	جمهورية مصر العربية
the <b>kingdom</b> of Saudi Arabia	the KSA	المملكة العربية السعودية

### Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :

- What are the best countries to make shoes ?  
 a) **Korea and Japan**      b) **Egypt and Italy**      c) **Italy and Spain**
- What do we wear with shoes ?  
 a) **Paper**      b) **Socks**      c) **Cotton**
- What are shoes important for ?  
 a) **Sleeping**      b) **Walking**      c) **Swimming**
- What are the best shoes made of ?  
 a) **Rubber**      b) **Cotton**      c) **Leather**

#### 2. Finish the following dialogue with one word each:

Mona : What are you looking at?  
 Hala : I'm (1) ..... at a picture of some things on a museum website.  
 Mona : What are they (2) ..... ?  
 Hala : They're very beautiful and they're very old.  
 Mona : Where do they come (3) ..... ?  
 Hala : They're (4) .....



- a) **New York**                      b) **America**                      c) **USA**                      d) **American**  
 15- The gold ..... is safe.  
 a) **nine**                              b) **mine**                              c) **my**                              d) **me**

**6. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- In 1994, there was a shortage of water and rice in Japanese.  
 2- Hassan is wearing a hat and a gold jacket.  
 3- In America , Damietta is famous for its furniture.  
 4- A lot of leather shoes and bags come from Egyptian.  
 6- The best shoes are usually made of cotton .  
 7- Gold comes from a cow and you can use it to make money.  
 8- My coat were made in the UK.  
 9- That fast car is not Korean. It is Japan .  
 10- Does this beautiful cotton shirt come from Egyptian ?

**7. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " Rubber "**

You may use these words:

( **many / Brazil – also / Africa & Asia – some / oil – use / different – made of / rubber** )

Rubber comes from rubber trees. ....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

Shoes are important for walking. We always wear socks with them. The best shoes are made of leather. Italy and Spain are the best countries to make shoes.

**General Test on Unit 17**

**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع افي نهاية الامتحان

- 1- What are books made from ?  
 a) **Leather**                      b) **Paper**                      c) **Wood**  
 2- Where does the paper in the book come from?  
 a) **The UAE**                      b) **The UK**                      c) **The USA**  
 3- What is paper made from ?  
 a) **Wood**                              b) **Wool**                              c) **Leather**  
 4- What are some books covers made from ?  
 a) **Paper**                              b) **Wood**                              c) **Leather**

**2- Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Maha : What's your father's job ?

Laila : He is a worker in a (1)..... mine .

Maha : Is it (2)..... to work in a mine ?

Laila : Yes, because it is (3)..... .

Maha : Is there enough of this (4)..... on the earth?

Laila : No, there is only enough of this material on earth to fill two large swimming pools.

**3- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) **Ali** : ..... ?

Ahmad: Most shirts and blouses are made of cotton.

**Ali** : And what about the best shoes ?

Ahmad: The best shoes are usually made of leather.

2) **Nadia** : Where does this toy come from ?

Mayar : This toy plane comes from the USA.

**Nadia** : Where does most coffee come from ?

Mayar : .....

4- Read the following , then answer the questions:

Every country in the world has its special products. Today, China is one of the most important countries in the world. Beijing is the capital of China. It's the second largest city after Shanghai. A lot of our cars, pens, fans, clothes, plates and toys come from China. Brasília is the capital of Brazil. A lot of wood for paper and furniture comes from trees in Brazil. There are many rubber trees in Brazil. A lot of coffee that people drink is Brazilian.

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- What's the capital of China? 2- What's the largest city in China?

B) Choose the correct answer :

- 3- A lot of coffee that people drink comes from ..... .
a) Egypt b) Brazil c) China d) Shanghai
4- Toys, plates and fans come from ..... .
a) China b) Brazilian c) Brazil d) Chinese
5- ..... is the capital of Brazil .
a) Beijing b) Shanghai c) Brasília d) Brazil

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b , c , or d :

- 1- This hat is made ..... an old newspaper.
a) in b) of c) from d) at
2- How ..... is it? - It's twelve metres high.
a) old b) wide c) heavy d) big
3- Is this beautiful cotton shirt ..... ?
a) Korea b) Egyptian c) Brazil d) Japan
4- In the kitchen, you must wear ..... gloves.
a) wood b) paper c) rubber d) metal
5- A ..... is something metal that we buy food or drink in.
a) sandal b) metal c) tyre d) can
6- Many computers and phones come ..... Japan .
a) from b) at c) in d) of
7- ..... ? - It's big and it's made of plastic .
a) Where does this come from b) How tall is this
c) What is it like d) What are they
8- Many of the computers and phones we use are ..... .
a) Korea b) Japan c) Japanese d) China

6- Read and correct the underlined words :

- 1- This pencil case is made in rubber.
2- A mine is useful because it gives us wool and meat. 3- Paper is made of wood.

7- Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :

" Egyptian products "

You may use these words: ( Egyptian rice – cotton – leather – oil – furniture )

You can find many Egyptian things in other countries. ....

8- a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. The dragon flew around the earth and ..... every night.
a) sang b) liked c) became d) laughed
2. The dragon looked at the ..... when he was saying sorry.
a) people b) ground c) sun d) earth

b. Answer the following questions :

- 1. Who ordered the dragon to sing to make people happy?
2. What is the moral of this story?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

Books are made from paper. Most of the world's paper is made in the USA. Paper is made from wood. Some books covers are made from leather.



# Unit 18 The modern world

## العالم الحديث

### Aims of the unit

- 1- Read about how a newspaper is made
- 2- Listen to someone talking about an invention
- 3- Use the present simple passive
- 4- Write about how something is made
- 5- Respond to information

## Lessons 1 & 2

news	اخبار	mistake	خطأ
headline	عنوان رئيسي	French	فرنسي
reporter	مراسل / مذيع	radio stations	محطات إذاعية
newspaper	جريدة	around	حول
machine	ماكينة / آلة	photos	صور فوتوغرافية
article	مقال	oil	بتترول / زيت
interview	مقابلة شخصية	Canada	كندا
spelling	هجاء	bakery	مخبز
readers	قراء	hundreds	مئات
complete	كامل	millions	ملايين
ready	مستعد / جاهز	accurate	دقيق
online	على / متصل بالانترنت	languages	لغات
page	صفحة	office	حجرة مكتب
order	أمر / طلب	each	كل
Information	معلومات	not only	ليس فقط

### Irregular verbs

report , ed , ed	يبلغ / يقدم تقرير	interview , ed , ed	يجري مقابلة
add , ed , ed	يضيف	check , ed , ed	يراجع
collect , ed , ed	يجمع	design , ed , ed	يصمم
correct , ed , ed	يصحح	cook , ed , ed	يطهو
decide , d , d	يقرر	print , ed , ed	يطبع

### Regular verbs

write / wrote / written	يكتب	drive / drove / driven	يقود
sell / sold / sold	يبيع	buy / bought / bought	يشترى
take / took / taken	يأخذ	speak / spoke / spoken	يتكلم
find out / found / found	يكشف	spell / spelt / spelt	يتهجى

## Text SB page 41

### How are newspapers made?

First, **reporters find out** about interesting news stories. They **interview** people and visit places to get **information**. Photos **are often taken** and they are added to some of the **articles**.

After an article is written, the information is **checked** by people in the **newspaper office**. They want the information to be **accurate**. The **spelling is corrected**, too. A **headline** is added so that **readers** know what the article is about. Finally, the order of the articles and photos **is decided**.

Each newspaper page is **designed** on a computer. Then the complete newspaper is **printed**. The newspaper must be ready early in the morning, so people must work **at night**.

The printed newspapers are **collected** and are driven to shops, where they are sold. Millions of newspapers are bought by people all over the world. Newspapers are **not only** bought in shops. You can usually read them **online**, too.

## Language notes

interview ( v.)

يجرى مقابلة

- They **interview** people and visit places to get information.

reporter(n) is a person who collects information and writes about it.

مراسل صحفي أو مذيع ( غالبا يعمل ويجمع الاخبار من خارج الجريدة )

- **Reporters** visit places and interview people to get information.

- Maged is a **reporter** who writes for a newspaper.

article ( n.)

مقال ( موضوع يكتب في جريدة أو مجلة أو على النت )

- This reporter's **articles** are read by many people.

headline

عنوان رئيسي

- **Headlines** are written to make people want to read the article.

drive to shops

يوصل سلع لمحلات بسيارة

- The printed newspapers are collected and **driven to shops**, where they are sold.

not only

ليس فقط

- Newspapers are **not only** bought in shops. You can usually read them online, too.

all over the world

في كل انحاء العالم

- Sandals are made in Africa. You can buy them **all over the world**.

- Millions of newspapers are bought by people **all over the world**.

around the world

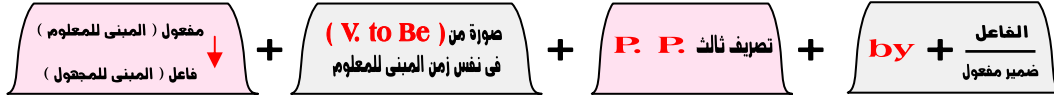
حول العالم

- About 200 million emails are written every minute **around the world**.

- This fridge uses no electricity, so it's helping people all **around the world**.

# Grammar

تستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول **Passive Voice** عندما يكون **فاعل** الجملة **مجهول** بالنسبة لنا ، أو نعرفه ونريد إخفائه لأي سبب ، أو قد يكون **غير مهم** ذكره .  
 للتحويل من **Active** إلى **Passive** نتبع الخطوات التالية :  
 وأهم الخطوات هي تحديد ( **الفاعل** ) و ( **الفعل وزمنه** ) و ( **المفعول** ) ، ثم نتبع الآتي :



pres. simp. ( passive ) : —————> المضارع البسيط في المبني للمجهول  
 مفعول O. + am / is / are + p.p. + فاعل S. تصريف ثالث

- Newspapers **are bought** every day.
- Millions of text messages **are written** every day.
- Newspapers **are sold** in that shop.
- Hundreds of photos **are taken** of the Suez Canal.

استخدام ( **فاعل + by** ) إذا كان ذلك ضروري في المعنى .

- ☞ Tables and chairs **are made** by a carpenter .
- ☞ All the pictures **were painted** by the students.

**be + not + p.p.**

في حالة النفي يتم نفي v. to be. ثم وضع التصريف الثالث .

- ☞ Photos **aren't added** to all newspaper articles.

تقديم الفعل المساعد ( **V. to Be** ) على ( **الفاعل** ) ثم استخدام ( **التصريف الثالث** ) عند عمل سؤال في المبني للمجهول .

**Ques. word + be + subject + past participle ?**

- ☞ What **is** it **made** of ?
- ☞ When **are** photos **taken** of your class ?

**Q.w + be + p.p. + obj?**

للمبني للمجهول إذا لم تحتوى الجملة على فاعل

- ☞ Which languages **are spoken** in Canada?
- ☞ How many newspapers **are printed** every day in Egypt?

**v.to.be + فاعل + p.p. + مفعول**

للمبني للمجهول حالة السؤال بـ ( هل ) نستخدم

- ☞ Is the food **cooked** ?
- ☞ Are newspapers **made** from paper ?

## Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع في نهاية الامتحان

- 1- Who wants information to be accurate ?  
 a) **Article**                      b) **Headline**                      c) **Reporters**
- 2- How do you know what the article is about ? - From .....  
 a) **the newspaper**                      b) **the article**                      c) **the headline**
- 3- When do people work in the newspaper ?  
 a) **In the morning.**                      b) **At night.**                      c) **At office.**
- 4- When must the newspaper be ready ?  
 a) **In the morning**                      b) **At night**                      c) **In the evening.**

**2- Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

- Editor : What's your (1)..... about ?  
 Reporter : About the importance of recycling .  
 Editor : Is information (2)..... in the office ?  
 Reporter : Yes, it is checked by people in the newspaper office.  
 Editor : What's the (3)..... ?  
 Reporter : The future of (4)..... .

**3- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1) **Amir** : What do reporters do to get information ?  
 Sherif : .....  
**Amir** : What's your favourite newspaper ?  
 Sherif : Al Akhbar.
- 2) **Karam** : ..... ?  
 Rady : To know what the article is about.  
**Karam** : Do you read all the newspaper or the headlines?  
 Rady : I always read all headlines only.

**4- Read the following, then answer the questions:**

What happens after the article is written? Information is checked by people in the newspaper office. They want it to be accurate. Spelling is corrected, too. A headline is added so that readers know what the article is about. Finally, the order of the articles and photos is decided. Each newspaper page is designed on a computer. Then the complete newspaper is printed. The newspaper must be ready early in the morning, so people must work at night.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why do people must work at night?  
 2- When are articles and photos decided ?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

- 3- The underlined pronoun it refers to the .....  
 a) newspaper                      b) headline                      c) article                      d) information
- 4- A/ An ..... tells us what the article contains.  
 a) headline                      b) article                      c) computer                      d) newspaper
- 5- Finally, the newspaper is ..... by the machines.  
 a) designed                      b) printed                      c) decided                      d) added

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

- 1- People ..... millions of text messages every day.  
 a) writes                      b) is written                      c) write                      d) writing
- 2- After an article is written, the information ..... by people in the newspaper office.  
 a) checks                      b) is checked                      c) checking                      d) checked
- 3- The table is set ..... Mona and Mayada.  
 a) of                      b) with                      c) by                      d) in
- 4- You ..... helped by them.  
 a) it is                      b) isn't                      c) not are                      d) are not
- 5- Is the thief ..... by the police officer?  
 a) caught                      b) catch                      c) catching                      d) catches
- 6- The reporters want the information to .....  
 a) accurately                      b) be accurate                      c) accurate                      d) be accurately
- 7- Newspapers ..... not only bought in shops.  
 a) do                      b) is                      c) be                      d) are

- 8- How are newspapers ..... ?  
 a) **making**                      b) **make**                      c) **made**                      d) **is made**
- 9- Are the newspapers ..... every day?  
 a) **printing**                      b) **are printed**                      c) **printed**                      d) **is printed**
- 10- The glass ..... with water .  
 a) **fills**                      b) **is filled**                      c) **is fill**                      d) **is filling**
- 11- The documents are .....  
 a) **printed**                      b) **is printed**                      c) **print**                      d) **printer**
- 12- The litter ..... away by my son.  
 a) **threw**                      b) **are thrown**                      c) **throw**                      d) **is thrown**
- 13- After an article is written, the information ..... checked.  
 a) **does**                      b) **is**                      c) **were**                      d) **are**
- 14- There are about 15330 radio ..... in the USA.  
 a) **books**                      b) **emails**                      c) **cars**                      d) **stations**
- 15- This printer can ..... sixty pages a minute.  
 a) **collect**                      b) **print**                      c) **check**                      d) **find out**
- 16- You should ..... the spelling mistakes.  
 a) **work**                      b) **correct**                      c) **interview**                      d) **add**
- 17- He is reading a .....  
 a) **photos**                      b) **newspaper**                      c) **article**                      d) **information**
- 18- He is a ..... for El Akbar.  
 a) **readers**                      b) **headline**                      c) **teacher**                      d) **reporter**
- 19- Did you see the ..... of today's newspaper?  
 a) **online**                      b) **information**                      c) **headlines**                      d) **interview**
- 20- Read the ..... on page two. It's about recycling plastic.  
 a) **shop**                      b) **photo**                      c) **spelling**                      d) **article**

**6- Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- They add headlines so each article so that readers know what the article is about.
- 2- Hani cut the article out of the book .
- 3- If you want to print this email, use the print.
- 4- The spelling of this word is correct by me.
- 5- Newspapers made with the help of computers .
- 6- The letter is not writing by me.                      7- Blue shoes are wear by them.
- 8- A lot of money are paid by her.                      9- Oil is used to made fuels.
- 10- Newspapers are buy every day.
- 11- Every year thousands of people are kill on our roads.
- 12- What is used to cooked in a kitchen?
- 13- People are collected the printed newspapers and drive them to shops.
- 14- How do people are made newspapers?
- 15- The shop not is closed.

**7- Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

**" Languages "**

You may use these words:( **Egypt / spoken – English – France – Chinese – Japan** )

All over the world there are more than 7000 languages, but about two thirds of the earth, people speak about 13 languages. ....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الاول

Reporters want information to be accurate. The headline tells us what the article is about. People work at night because the newspaper must be ready in the morning.

## Lessons 3 , 4 &amp; Review

fridge	ثلاجة	farming	الزراعة
shower	دش / حمام	wheat	قمح
hole	حفرة	maize	نبات الذرة
container	الحاوية / الوعاء	mangoes	مانجو
inside	الحاوية / الوعاء	oranges	برتقال
soil	تربة زراعية	lemons	ليمون
cool	بارد / لطيف	grapes	عنب
space	فراغ / حيز	spinach	سبانخ
pity	شفقة / رحمة	crops	محاصيل
project	مشروع	several	عديد
useful	مفيد	Kafr el-Sheikh	كفر الشيخ
Really?	حقاً ؟	Dakahlia	الدقهلية
South-West Africa	جنوب غرب أفريقيا	Beheira	البحيرة
famous	مشهور	Upper Egypt	الصعيد
flood	فيضان	sugar cane	قصب السكر
cousin	ابن / ابنة - عم / خال / عمة / خالة	fields	حقول
donkey	حمار	seeds	بذور
shaduf	شادوف ( أداة ري )	economy	اقتصاد
warm weather	طقس دافئ	mice	فئران
hill	تل	areas	مناطق
lunchtime	وقت الغداء	sandwiches	سندوتشات
however	مع ذلك	flour	دقيق
dream	حلم	proud	فخور
mixture	خليط / مزيج	pieces of	قطع من
idea	فكرة	plough	محراث
irrigation	الري	village	قرية

## Regular verbs

believe , d , d	يعتقد / يصدق	stay , ed , ed	يقيم
plough , ed , ed	يحرث	plant , ed , ed	يزرع
irrigate , d , d	يروي	invent , ed , ed	يخترع
rain , ed , ed	تمطر	climb , ed , ed	يتسلق
mix , ed , ed	يخلط	cook , ed , ed	يطهو
name , ed , ed	يسمى	farm , ed , ed	يزرع
seed , ed , ed	يبذر	consist of , ed , ed	يتكون من

## Irregular verbs

meet / met / met	يقابل	grow / grew / grown	يزرع
drive / drove / driven	يقود	come / came / come	يأتي
put / put / put	يضع	eat / ate / eaten	يأكل

## Text SB page 49

### Farming in Egypt

The water from the Nile, the warm weather and the good soil make land near the Nile very good for farming. We grow a lot of **wheat, maize, mangoes, oranges, lemons, grapes** and **spinach** in Egypt. **Rice, cotton** and **sugar** are also very important crops.

- Most modern Egyptian farmers grow several different crops every year. Most **rice** is grown in Kafr el-Sheikh and Dakahlia. The largest **cotton crop** is from Beheira and **sugar cane** is grown in Upper Egypt.
- Today, machines and modern ways to **irrigate** fields make farmers' work faster and easier. **However**, farmers work very hard so that they have enough crops to sell.

In the past, farmers used **donkeys** and other animals to help them farm the land using a **plough**. It took a long time for them to do this and later to plant the **seeds**. To **irrigate** the land, farmers used the **shaduf**. With this invention, they could irrigate fields when the river was not in **flood**. However, this was very hard work.

- Egyptian **rice, cotton** and sugar are sold to many other countries. The crops that are sold are important for Egypt's **economy**.

## Grammar

### However

مع ذلك / بالرغم من ذلك

- I was very tired . **However** , I couldn't sleep .
- He told the truth , **however** , his parents did not believe him .
- He's very strong . **However** , he can't carry the box .

### but

لكن ( تأتي في وسط الكلام )

- I was very tired , **but** I couldn't sleep .
- He told the truth , **but** his parents did not believe him .

### although

بالرغم من

- **Although** I was very tired , I couldn't sleep .
- OR** : I couldn't sleep **although** I was very tired .

### as well :

أيضاً ( عند تشابه أو عدم إختلاف الجملتين )

( to add the same kind of information )

- Hesham visited Rome last year . He visited Paris **as well** .

## Exercises on Lessons 3, 4 & Review

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c : نص الاستماع في نهاية الامتحان

- 1- What's bread made from ?  
a) **Wheat or rice**      b) **Maize or cotton**      c) **Maize or wheat.**
- 2- What is maize used as ?  
a) **Food**      b) **Juice**      c) **Desert**
- 3- What's the largest country in growing maize ?  
a) **The USA**      b) **China**      c) **The UAE**
- 4- What's the second largest country in growing maize ?  
a) **The USA**      b) **The UAE**      c) **China**

**2- Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Hazem : My grandfather has a farm near the Nile.  
 Omar : (1) ..... ?  
 Hazem : Yes. I helped him to (2) ..... rice last year.  
 Omar : How (3) ..... . Does he grow very much rice?  
 Hazem : Yes, you probably have rice from his farm in your kitchen!  
 Omar : I can't (4) ..... it!

**3- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) Ahmed : Next year, my grandfather will sell the farm.  
 Mazin : Oh ..... . What ..... .  
 Ahmed : Don't worry. I think he will have a nice time when he stops working!  
 Mazin : That's good!

2) Rasha : Yesterday, I met a famous person.  
 Nawal : ..... ? ..... !  
 Rasha : She signed me an autograph.

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

The water from the Nile, the warm weather and the good soil make land near the Nile very good for farming. We grow a lot of wheat, maize, mangoes, oranges, lemons, grapes and spinach in Egypt. Rice, cotton and sugar are also very important crops. Most modern Egyptian farmers grow several different crops every year. Most rice is grown in Kafr el-Sheikh and Dakahlia. The largest cotton crop is from Beheira and sugar cane is grown in Upper Egypt.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Where's the most rice grown ?
- 2- What's making the land from the Nile good for farming ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 3- The largest cotton crop is from ..... .  
 a) Upper Egypt      b) Beheira      c) Kafr el-Sheikh      d) Dakahlia
- 4- Most rice is grown in ..... .  
 a) Upper Egypt      b) Beheira      c) Kafr el-Sheikh      d) Cairo
- 5- Rice, cotton and sugar cane are very important ..... .  
 a) water      b) soil      c) cane      d) crops

**5- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d:**

- 1- My grandfather farm the land using a ..... .  
 a) soil      b) water      c) seed      d) plough
- 2- To irrigate the land, farmers used the ..... .  
 a) shaduf      b) plough      c) land      d) economy
- 3- Which crop is used to make clothes ? ..... .  
 a) Rice      b) Maize      c) Cotton      d) Grapes
- 4- A / An ..... keeps meat fresh.  
 a) plough      b) fridge      c) cooker      d) oven
- 5- There's a big ..... in the wall.  
 a) soil      b) cool      c) container      d) hole
- 6- We need a larger ..... to keep our rice in.  
 a) hole      b) container      c) electricity      d) shaduf
- 7- Egypt's ..... is very good for faming.  
 a) soil      b) flood      c) wheat      d) economy
- 8- John's house was damaged by the ..... .  
 a) seed      b) farm      c) flood      d) donkey



- 9- What a ..... it is that you can't come!  
 a) **good**                      b) **believe**                      c) **interesting**                      d) **pity**
- 10- My father and mother have a big ..... in Dakahlia .  
 a) **farms**                      b) **farmer**                      c) **farm**                      d) **farming**
- 11- Flour is made from .....  
 a) **sugar cane**                      b) **rice**                      c) **orange**                      d) **wheat**
- 12- ..... is used for people and animal food .  
 a) **Maize**                      b) **Cotton**                      c) **Rice**                      d) **Spinach**
- 13- My favourite drink is ..... juice.  
 a) **spinach**                      b) **rice**                      c) **mangoes** d) **maize**
- 14- In Cuba, tobacco is their main .....  
 a) **farm**                      b) **plough**                      c) **soil**                      d) **crop**
- 15- The ..... is a main material for making sugar.  
 a) **sugar cane**                      b) **maize**                      c) **orange**                      d) **wheat**
- 16- ..... you don't go to bed early , you will be tired tomorrow .  
 a) **Although**                      b) **However**                      c) **If not**                      d) **If**
- 17- I have a nice life and I am happy . ..... , there are three small things about my past which I would change if I could .  
 a) **However**                      b) **Although**                      c) **If not**                      d) **If**
- 18- She is very poor , ..... she is happy .  
 a) **and**                      b) **However**                      c) **although**                      d) **but**
- 19- She is very poor . ..... , she is happy .  
 a) **and**                      b) **However**                      c) **although**                      d) **but**
- 20- ..... she is very poor, she is happy .  
 a) **But**                      b) **However**                      c) **Although**                      d) **And**

**6- Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Tom planted some flower soil in his garden.  
 2- You must mix the land carefully to not waste water.  
 3- I feel better when I drink hot spinach juice.  
 4- There are two mouse inside that hole.  
 5- The best clothes are made of maize .  
 6- A crop is a machine that is used for farming the land.  
 7- After the flood, many farming lost their farms.  
 8- Cottons have a lot of vitamin C.  
 9- She couldn't sleep, but it was late.  
 10- Hani was hungry, so he didn't eat.  
 11- "You came first in the class in all the subjects." "I can't amazing it!"  
 12- My little sister doesn't eat cakes. How, she is very hungry.

**7- Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences : " Sugar cane "**

You may use these words:

( **warm weather** - **Upper Egypt** - **paper** - **Brazil** / **first** - **India** / **second** )

Sugar cane is a very important crop. ....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

Bread is made from maize or wheat. Maize is used as a food for people and animals. The USA is the largest country in growing maize then China.

**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c :** نص الاستماع في نهاية الامتحان

1- What's paper made from ?

- a) **Sugar cane's stalks**      b) **Maize's stalks**      c) **Rice's stalks**

2- What's the largest country in growing sugar cane ?

- a) **India**      b) **Brazil**      c) **Egypt**

3- Where is it grown in Egypt ?

- a) **East Egypt**      b) **North Egypt**      c) **Upper Egypt**

4- What's the second largest country in growing sugar cane ?

- a) **Egypt**      b) **Brazil**      c) **India**

**2- Finish the following dialogue with one word each:**

Amir : Yesterday, I met Mohammad Abo Trika in the street.

Hani : Really? I can't (1) ..... it!

Amir : He told me that he will never play football again.

Hani : Oh (2) .....! What a pity!

Amir : He told me that he'll establish a (3) ..... to help poor people.

Hani : That's (4) ..... !

**3- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) Aunt : Do you like spinach?

Noura : No, I don't.

Aunt : .....

2) Teacher : ..... ?

Osama : Because they grow crops that we eat . And that are sold in other countries. It's important for Egypt's economy.

**4- Read the following , then answer the questions:**

In South-West Africa. It was very hot, but people couldn't have fridges, because there wasn't any electricity in their village. There was a university student having an idea. Her invention consists of two containers. One container is put inside the other one. The container on the outside is made of wood or plastic. A few holes are made in the outside container for air. The container on the inside is made of metal. There aren't any holes in this container, because the food inside it has to stay dry.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

1- Why didn't people in the village have fridges ?

2- What's the container on the outside made of ?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

3- The container inside is made of .....

- a) **cotton**      b) **metal**      c) **wood**      d) **plastic**

4- There aren't any holes in the ..... container.

- a) **dry**      b) **a few**      c) **outside**      d) **inside**

5- The holes were made for .....

- a) **electricity**      b) **metal**      c) **dry**      d) **air**

**5- Choose the correct answer from a, b , c , or d :**

1- Reporters visit places and ..... people to get information.

- a) **interview**      b) **write**      c) **design**      d) **work**

- 2- Millions of text messages ..... every day.  
 a) **is written**                      b) **written**                      c) **wrote**                      d) **are written**
- 3- About 60 of the radio ..... are listened to every day in Egypt.  
 a) **books**                      b) **emails**                      c) **stations**                      d) **news**
- 4- Are these shoes made ..... Spain?  
 a) **with**                      b) **in**                      c) **of**                      d) **from**
- 5- I watched a very sad programme on TV about a flood in India.  
 - Oh dear. That's ..... !  
 a) **believe**                      b) **amazing**                      c) **interesting**                      d) **bad**
- 6- Sandwiches .....to the newspaper office every lunchtime.  
 a) **taken**                      b) **is took**                      c) **are taken**                      d) **is taken**
- 7- The farmer seeded the field with ..... .  
 a) **weighted**                      b) **weight**                      c) **white**                      d) **wheat**
- 8- ..... it was raining, he went out.  
 a) **Although**                      b) **But**                      c) **So**                      d) **However**

**6- Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- If it rains, it'll irrigated the land.
- 2- This book is wrote in English and Arabic.
- 3- "My friend once found a letter in a bottle in the sea." "What a pity ?"

**7- Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences :**

" Cotton "

You may use these words:( **warm** – **clothes** – **Egyptian** – **sold** – **China / first** )  
 Cotton is a soft material that is planted from cotton seeds. ....

.....

.....

.....

**8- a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The dragon flew back to the sun, but it was very ..... .  
 a) **hard**                      b) **easy**                      c) **good**                      d) **quick**
2. The Iron Man sat on the ground and made a huge ..... around him.  
 a) **forest**                      b) **desert**                      c) **fire**                      d) **sun**

**b. Answer the following questions :**

1. Where did the dragon fly to before the test ?
2. Do you think the Iron Man considered Hogarth a friend ?

نص الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال الأول

Paper is made from sugar cane's stalks .Brazil is the largest country in growing it. India is the second. In Egypt it's grown in Upper Egypt.

## Ted Hughes (1930 - 1998)



## المؤلف تيد هيوز

Ted Hughes was from the north of England. He started writing when he was at school. He wrote poems **قصائد** for the school magazine **مجلة المدرسة**. Hughes studied at Cambridge University **جامعة كامبريدج**, then from 1957-1959 he taught English in the USA. When he returned to England, he stopped teaching and worked as a writer **كاتب**. Hughes loved nature **الطبيعة** and it often influenced his writing **أثرت الطبيعة على كتاباته**. He wrote about the beautiful animals and birds of England. Hughes was one of the best poets **شعراء** of the 1900s, but he also wrote successful **ناجحة** children's books. In 1970, he bought a farm in the southwest **جنوب غرب** of England and enjoyed **إستمتع** writing and farming **الزراعة** there. He died aged 68. **توفي عن عمر يناهز 68 عاماً**.

### The Iron Man **الرجل الحديدي** by Ted Hughes

Answer the following questions : **مجاب عنها :**

- 1- Who is the writer of the novel The Iron Man ? **من هو كاتب رواية الرجل الحديدي؟**  
- Ted Hughes . **تيد هيوز**

---

- 2- When and where was he born and died ? **متى وأين ولد ومات؟**  
- Ted Hughes was from the north of England born in 1930 and died in 1998 . **تيد هيوز من شمال إنجلترا ولد عام 1930 وتوفي عام 1998.**

---

- 3- When did he start writing ? **متى بدأ الكتابة؟**  
- He started writing when he was at school. **بدأ الكتابة عندما كان في المدرسة**

---

- 4- What did he do when he was at school ? **ماذا فعل عندما كان في المدرسة؟**  
- He wrote poems for the school magazine. **كتب قصائد في مجلة المدرسة**

---

- 5- Where did he study ? **أين درس؟**  
- Hughes studied at Cambridge University, then from 1957-1959 he taught English in the USA. **درس هيوز في جامعة كامبريدج، في الفترة من 1957-1959 ثم درس الإنجليزية في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية .**

---

- 6- What did he do when he returned to England ? **ماذا فعل عندما عاد إلى إنجلترا؟**  
- When he returned to England, he stopped teaching and worked as a writer. **عندما عاد إلى إنجلترا، توقفت عن التدريس وعمل ككاتب.**

---

- 7- What affected his writing style ? **ماذا أثر في أسلوب كتابته؟**  
- Hughes loved nature and it often influenced his writing. **هيوز أحب الطبيعة وكثيرا ما أثرت على كتاباته**

---

- 8- What did he write about ? **عن ماذا كتب؟**  
- He wrote about the beautiful animals and birds of England. **كتب عن الحيوانات والطيور الجميلة الموجودة بإنجلترا**

---

- 9- What else did he write about ? **عن ماذا أكتب أيضا؟**  
- Hughes was one of the best poets of the 1900s, but he also wrote successful children's books. **كان هيوز واحد من أفضل شعراء فترة 1900 لكنه كتب أيضا كتب أطفال ناجحة**

---

- 10- What did he do at the end of his life ? **ماذا فعل في نهاية حياته؟**  
- In 1970, he bought a farm in the southwest of England and enjoyed writing and farming there. **في عام 1970، اشترى مزرعة في جنوب غرب إنجلترا، وتمتع بالكتابة والزراعة هناك**

Answer the following questions :

يجيب عنها الطالب

- 1- What were many of Ted Hughes's poems about?
- 2- What's a poem ?
- 3- Who are poets ?
- 4- What's the meaning of enjoyed ?
- 5- What's the meaning of influenced?
- 6- Did Ted Hughes go to the university?
- 7- Where and when did he teach English?
- 8- What did he often write about ?
- 9- What did he buy when he was 40 ?

Who is the Iron Man? من هو الرجل الحديدي ؟

Ted Hughes wrote *The Iron Man* as a story for his two children. In the story, the adults want to destroy the Iron Man, but a young boy called Hogarth tries to understand him and help him. It is a story about how we learn to understand each other and be kind. In 1999, a film company made an animated film of the story.

تيد هيووز كتب رواية الرجل الحديدي كقصة لأولاده الإثنيتين. في هذه القصة أراد البالغون أن يدمروا الرجل الحديدي ولكن الولد الصغير هوجارث حاول أن يفهمه ويساعده . هذه القصة عن كيفية تعلم فهم بعضنا البعض وأن نكون ودودين. في عام 1999 قامت شركة أفلام بعمل فيلم رسوم متحركة خاصة بهذه القصة .

Answer the following questions :

مجاب عنها :

- 1- What's the meaning of the word destroy ?
- Damage something so badly that you cannot use it again
- 2- Who are adults ?
- People who are not children
- 3- Why is the young boy important in the story?
- He tries to understand and help the Iron Man.
- 4- What's the animated film ?
- A story with moving drawings.
- 5-What do we learn in this story? Or What's the moral of the story ?
- We learn to understand and be kind to each other.

Characters شخصيات القصة

#### ➤ The Iron Man

He is the main character of the story . Nobody knew him or knew where he lived. He was taller than a house and his head was as big as a bedroom. He didn't speak. He only eats metal things. People were frightened of him and tried to destroy him. He beat the dragon in the end.

#### ➤ Hogarth

A farmer's son who tried to understand the Iron Man. He was the first one to see the Iron Man. He was clever and brave. First he succeeded in making him fall in the trap. And he succeeded in sending him to destroy the dragon.

#### ➤ Hogarth's father

He is the second one to know about and see the Iron Man. He went in his car to find help. He saw unusual things that the Iron Man did.

#### ➤ The farmers

They are the people who tried to destroy the Iron Man after eating their tractors, cars and ploughs. But in the end they became kind to him. They were helpful to each other.

#### ➤ The dragon

An unusual animal flew down to earth. It had two large wings and a long tail. It was a huge and it flew as fast as a space rocket. It landed on Australia! It covered the country from the desert to the sea. The Iron Man beat him in the end.

# Chapter ( 1 )

dark night	ليلة مظلمة	unusual	غير معتاد
stand / stood / stood	يقف	half	نصف
cliff	جرف / منحدر صخري	tractor	جرار
bedroom	غرفة النوم	van	شاحنة صغيرة
suddenly	فجأة	quarter	ربع
walk off , ed , ed	يخرج ماشياً	plough	محراث
stone / s	حجر / أحجار	farmers	مزارعين
slowly	ببطء	destroy , ed , ed	يدمر
pick up , ed , ed	يمسك - يلتقط	trap (n.)	فخ - مصيدة
climb / climbing	يتسلق / التسلق	branches	فروع / أغصان
parents	الوالدين	soil	تراب الأرض
get into / got / got	يدخل	hole	ثقب
deep	عميق	walk into	يمشى إلى
fall down / fell / fell	يسقط	look up , ed , ed	ينظر لأعلى
shout , ed , ed	يصيح	in the road	في الطريق

## Text of chapter 1

One dark night, the Iron Man stood on a cliff. Nobody knew him or knew where he lived. He was taller than a house and his head was as big as a bedroom. He didn't speak. He waited and he looked at the sea. Then suddenly, he walked off the cliff and fell down to the beach! He broke on the stones.

في ليلة مظلمة كان الرجل الحديدي يقف في منحدر صخري. لا أحد كان يعرفه أو يعرف أين يعيش. كان الرجل الحديدي أطول من المنزل ورأسه في حجم غرفة النوم. لم يكن يتحدث. كان ينتظر وينظر إلى البحر. ثم فجأة خرج من الجرف وسقط على الشاطئ وتكسر على الأحجار.

The next morning, two birds flew to the beach. One bird found the Iron Man's eye and the second bird found his hand. Then the hand moved slowly. It picked up the eye, and then put the head, the arms, the legs and the body together! The Iron Man stood up again. Then he walked into the sea.

في الصباح التالي، كان هناك إثنين من الطيور على الشاطئ. طائر منهم وجد عين الرجل الحديدي والطائر الآخر وجد يديه. تحركت اليد ببطء. التقطت اليد العين ثم وضعت الرأس والأذرع والرجلين والجسم معاً. وقف الرجل الحديدي مرة أخرى ثم مشى إلى البحر.

One evening, a farmer's son called Hogarth was fishing in a river near the sea. He looked up and saw the Iron Man. The Iron Man was climbing the cliff. The boy ran home very fast and told his parents. Hogarth's father got into his car and went to find help. When he was in the car, he saw some very unusual things: half a tractor, half a van and a quarter of a plough in the road! Was something eating them? He started to drive home, but suddenly he saw the Iron Man! A very big hand tried to pick up the car, but Hogarth's father drove away as fast as he could.

ذات مساء، كان هناك ابن مزارع (فلاح) يدعى هوجارث يصطاد في النهر قرب البحر. نظر ورأى الرجل الحديدي. كان الرجل الحديدي يتسلق الجرف. جرى الولد للمنزل مسرعاً وأخبر والديه. ركب والد هوجارث سيارته وأسرع لطلب النجدة. وعندما كان الرجل في سيارته رأى أشياء غير طبيعية مثل نصف جرار و نصف شاحنة صغيرة وربع محراث في طريقه. قال الأب "هل أكلهم شيء ما؟" ثم بدأ الأب في القيادة عائداً إلى بيته ولكنه فجأة رأى الرجل الحديدي. يد كبيرة جداً حاولت التقاط السيارة ولكن والد هوجارث قاد سيارته بأقصى سرعة استطاعها.

The next day, all the farmers were talking and shouting. What was destroying their tractors, cars and vans? The Iron Man was eating them! They went to the cliff, but the Iron Man wasn't there. He was in the sea again. The farmers were angry. They wanted to make a trap for the Iron Man. They made a big, deep hole and covered it with tree branches and soil. They put an old van next to the hole and waited for the Iron Man. They waited for many days, but the Iron Man didn't come.

في اليوم التالي , كان كل المزارعين يتحدثون ويصيحون ما الذي دمر جراراتهم وسياراتهم وشاحناتهم ؟ وأجابوا أن الرجل الحديدي هو الذي أكلهم . فذهبوا جميعاً إلى الجرف ولكن الرجل الحديدي لم يكن هناك. كان في البحر مرة أخرى . غضب المزارعين وأرادوا أن ينصبوا فخاً للرجل الحديدي. صنعوا حفرة كبيرة وعميقة وغطوها بفروع الأشجار والتراب. وضعوا شاحنة صغيرة قديمة بجانب الحفرة وانتظروا الرجل الحديدي. إنتظروا أياما عديدة ولكن الرجل الحديدي لم يأتي .

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : **مجاب عنها :**

- 1- The Iron Man stood on a .....  
a) **shelf**                      b) **roof**                      c) **cliff**                      d) **house**
- 2- ..... knew the Iron Man before .  
a) **Hogarth**                      b) **Nobody**                      c) **Farmers**                      d) **Birds**
- 3- The Iron Man was ..... than a house .  
a) **shorter**                      b) **taller**                      c) **younger**                      d) **stronger**
- 4- The Iron Man's head was as ..... as a bedroom.  
a) **small**                      b) **long**                      c) **tall**                      d) **big**
- 5- The Iron Man didn't speak. He waited and he looked at the .....  
a) **river**                      b) **lake**                      c) **canal**                      d) **sea**
- 6- The Iron Man walked off the cliff and fell down to the ..... !  
a) **sea**                      b) **hole**                      c) **beach**                      d) **cliff**
- 7- The Iron Man broke on the .....  
a) **soil**                      b) **stones**                      c) **branches**                      d) **parents**
- 8- The next morning , ..... birds flew to the beach.  
a) **three**                      b) **four**                      c) **five**                      d) **two**
- 9- The first bird found the Iron Man's .....  
a) **nose**                      b) **eye**                      c) **mouth**                      d) **ear**
- 10- The ..... moved slowly.  
a) **leg**                      b) **head**                      c) **hand**                      d) **eye**
- 11- The ..... picked up the eye .  
a) **leg**                      b) **hand**                      c) **mouth**                      d) **arm**
- 12- The hand put the head, the arms, the ..... and the body together!  
a) **hand**                      b) **hands**                      c) **legs**                      d) **feet**
- 13- The Iron Man walked into the .....  
a) **cliff**                      b) **house**                      c) **lake**                      d) **sea**
- 14- The second bird found his .....  
a) **leg**                      b) **hand**                      c) **finger**                      d) **head**

Answer the following questions : **مجاب عنها :**

- 1- **What did the birds find on the beach?** ماذا وجدت الطيور على الشاطئ ؟  
- The Iron Man's hand and eye.
- 2- **Who saw the Iron Man first?** من الذي رأى الرجل الحديدي أولاً ؟  
- A farmer's son called Hogarth.
- 3- **Where was Hogarth's father driving when he saw the Iron Man?** إلى أين كان والد هوجارث يقود سيارته عندما رأى الرجل الحديدي ؟

- He was driving home.

**4- Where did the farmers go to look for the Iron Man?**

إلى أين ذهب المزارعين للبحث عن الرجل الحديدي ؟

- They went to the cliff.

**5- "They put an old van next to the hole and waited for the Iron Man."**

**Why do you think the farmers put an old van next to the hole?**

" وضع المزارعين شاحنة قديمة بجانب الحفرة وانتظروا الرجل الحديدي " لماذا تعتقد أن المزارعين وضعوا هذه الشاحنة بجوار الحفرة ؟

- They hope that the Iron Man will try to eat the van and fall in the hole. They want to trap the Iron Man so he can't cause more damage.

**6- Where did the iron man stand ? .**

أين وقف الرجل الحديدي؟

- One dark night, the Iron Man stood on a cliff.

**7- Did anyone know him or know where he lived ?**

هل عرف أحد الرجل الحديدي أو عرف أين كان يعيش ؟

- Nobody knew him or knew where he lived.

**8- Describe the iron man .**

أوصف الرجل الحديدي

- He was taller than a house and his head was as big as a bedroom.

**9- What did the Iron Man do after standing on the cliff ?**

ماذا فعل الرجل الحديدي بعد أن وقف على المنحدر الصخري ؟

- He didn't speak. He waited and he looked at the sea.

**10- What happened to the iron man ?**

ما حدث للرجل الحديدي ؟

- Suddenly, he walked off the cliff and fell down to the beach! He broke on the stones.

**11- What flew to the beach ?**

ما الذي طار على الشاطئ ؟

- The next morning, two birds flew to the beach.

**12- What did the birds find ?**

ماذا وجدت الطيور ؟

- One bird found the Iron Man's eye and the second bird found his hand. .

**13- What happened to the hand ?**

ما حدث لليد؟

- The hand moved slowly.

**14- What did the hand do ?**

ماذا فعلت اليد ؟

- It picked up the eye, and then put the head, the arms, the legs and the body together!

**15- Where did the iron man walk ?**

أين مشى الرجل الحديدي ؟

- The Iron Man stood up again. Then he walked into the sea.

**16- What is the farmer's son called ?**

ماذا يسمى ابن المزارع ؟

- The farmer's son is called Hogarth .

**17- What was Hogarth doing ?**

ماذا كان يفعل هوجارث ؟

- He was fishing in a river near the sea.

**18- What did Hogarth see while fishing ?**

ماذا رأى هوجارث بينما كان يصطاد؟

- He looked up and saw the Iron Man.



**19- What was the Iron Man doing while Hogarth was fishing ?**

ما كان يفعل الرجل الحديدي بينما كان هوجارث يصطاد؟

- The Iron Man was climbing the cliff.

**20- What did the boy do when he saw the Iron Man?** ماذا فعل الصبي عندما رأى الرجل الحديدي؟

- The boy ran home very fast and told his parents.

**21- What did Hogarth's father do ?**

ماذا فعل والد هوجارث؟

- Hogarth's father got into his car and went to find help.

**22- Why do you think the Iron Man walks into the sea?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الحديدي مشى باتجاه البحر؟

- To find a safe place to hide in .

**23- What other things do you think the Iron Man would like to eat?**

ماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الحديدي يحب أن يأكل؟

- Anything metal.

**24- Do you think the farmers were right to make a trap for the Iron Man?**

هل تعتقد أن المزارعين كانوا على صواب في عمل المصيدة للرجل الحديدي؟

- Yes, I think so, to save their tractors , vans , cars and themselves.

**25- Was the iron man very big ?**

هل كان الرجل الحديدي ضخماً جداً؟

- Yes, he was enormous.

**26- Where did the Iron Man spend time?**

أين كان الرجل الحديدي يقضي وقته؟

- On the cliffs and in the sea.

**27- What happened to Iron Man when he fell off the cliff?**

- He broke on the beach but then put himself back together again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

يجيب عنها الطالب

1- A farmer's ..... called Hogarth was fishing in a river near the sea.

- a) daughter      b) father      c) son      d) mother

2- Hogarth looked ..... and saw the Iron Man.

- a) above      b) up      c) down      d) at

3- The Iron Man was climbing the ..... when the boy saw him.

- a) cliff      b) bedroom      c) house      d) mountain

4- ..... ran home very fast and told his parents.

- a) Iron Man      b) Hogarth's father      c) Farmers      d) Hogarth

5- Hogarth's father got into his ..... and went to find help.

- a) plough      b) car      c) van      d) tractor

6- When Hogarth's father was in the car, he saw some very ..... things.

- a) good      b) usual      c) unusual      d) bad

7- Hogarth's father saw a ..... of a plough of in the road!

- a) two      b) quarter      c) half      d) one

8- Hogarth's father started to ..... home, but suddenly he saw the Iron Man!

- a) drive      b) pick up      c) break      d) shout

9- A very big ..... tried to pick up the car .

- a) leg      b) hand      c) head      d) body

10- Hogarth's father drove away as ..... as he could when he saw the Iron Man.

- a) deep      b) fast      c) slow      d) big

- 11- The next day, all the farmers were talking and .....  
 a) **fishing**                      b) **shouting**                      c) **eating**                      d) **climbing**
- 12- What was ..... their tractors, cars and vans? - The Iron Man.  
 a) **destroying**                      b) **repairing**                      c) **shouting** d) **looking**
- 13- ..... went to the cliff, but the Iron Man wasn't there.  
 a) **Tractors**                      b) **Farmers**                      c) **Vans**                      d) **Days**
- 14- The farmers wanted to make a ..... for the Iron Man.  
 a) **stone**                      b) **branch**                      c) **cliff**                      d) **trap**
- 15- The farmers made a deep hole and ..... it with tree branches and soil.  
 a) **covered**                      b) **lived**                      c) **broke**                      d) **moved**
- 16- The farmers put an old ..... next to the hole and waited for the Iron Man.  
 a) **car**                      b) **plough**                      c) **tractor**                      d) **van**
- 17- The farmers waited for many ....., but the Iron Man didn't come.  
 a) **seconds**                      b) **days**                      c) **weeks**                      d) **minutes**
- 18- Hogarth saw the Iron man while he was .....  
 a) **eating**                      b) **driving**                      c) **fishing**                      d) **shouting**
- 19- Hogarth was .....  
 a) **a farmer**                      b) **the Iron Man**                      c) **a bird**                      d) **a farmer's son**
- 20- The farmers were ..... after seeing their vehicles .  
 a) **bad**                      b) **hungry**                      c) **angry**                      d) **happy**
- 21- Where did the birds find the body of the Iron Man?  
 a) **In the sea**                      b) **On the beach**                      c) **In the cliff** d) **In the river**
- 22- Where was Hogarth fishing ?  
 a) **On the beach**                      b) **In the trap**                      c) **In the sea** d) **On the farm**
- 23- Why did the farmers make a big hole ?  
 a) **To hide their tractors.**                      b) **To catch the Iron Man.**  
 c) **To break the stones.**                      d) **To climb the cliff.**
- 24- Who knew the Iron Man or knew where he lived ?  
 a) **Hogarth**                      b) **Hogarth's father**                      c) **Nobody** d) **Farmers**
- 25- What did the farmers cover the hole with ?  
 a) **Tractors and cars.**                      b) **Tree branches and soil.**  
 c) **An old van**                      d) **Stones.**
- 26- What did the hand pick up first ?  
 a) **The legs**                      b) **The head**                      c) **The arm** d) **The eye**
- 27- What were the unusual things Hogarth's fathers saw?  
 a) **The Iron Man standing on a cliff.**  
 b) **Half a tractor, half a van and a quarter of a plough.**  
 c) **The trap.**                      d) **A big and deep hole.**

Answer the following questions :

يجيب عنها الطالب

- 1- Who found the Iron Man's body on the sea ?
- 2- What was Hogarth doing when he saw the Iron Man ?
- 3- What did the Iron Man try to pick up ?
- 4- Who ate the farmer's tractors , cars and vans?
- 5- Why did the farmers make a big hole ?
- 6- What did the farmers cover the hole with?
- 7- When he was in the car, what did Hogarth's father see ?
- 8- Do you think something was eating the unusual things ?
- 9- What tried to pick up the car ?
- 10- What did Hogarth's father do ?

- 11- What did the farmers do the next day ?
- 12- What was destroying the farmers' tractors, cars and vans?
- 13- Where did the farmers look for the Iron Man?
- 14- How did the farmers feel towards the Iron Man ?
- 15- What did the farmers want to make for the Iron Man ?
- 16- How did the farmers make a trap for the Iron Man ?
- 17- What happened after making the trap ?
- 18- What were unusual things Hogarth's father saw?
- 19- Describe the trap that the farmers made .
- 20- Where did Hogarth's father see unusual things ?
- 21- The farmers wanted to trap the Iron Man. Were the farmers bad people?
- 22- Where did the Iron Man break ?
- 23- Why did the boy run home fast when he saw the Iron Man?
- 24- How was the Iron Man broken ?
- 25- Explain how the Iron Man was back again after he was broken.
- 26- How big was the Iron Man?
- 27- Who was Hogarth ?

## Chapter ( 2 )

one night	ذات ليلة	sorry	حزين
catch / caught / caught	يصطاد	a year later	بعد مرور عام
fox	ثعلب	come out of	يخرج من
walk down , ed , ed	يسير لأسفل	drive down / drove / driven	يقود نازلاً
hill	تل	bikes	دراجات
fence	سياج حديدي	cookers	بوتجازات
metal	معدن	fridges	ثلاجات
nail	مسمار	vehicles	مركبات
knife	سكين	scrap metal yard	ساحة للخردة المعدنية
clink!	صلصلة ( صوت )	react	رد فعل
turn towards , ed , ed	يتجه نحو	lamps	لمبات / مصابيح
frightened	خائف / مرعوب	laugh , ed , ed	يضحك
follow, ed , ed	يتبع	come up out / came / come	يخرج لأعلى

### Text of chapter 2

One night, Hogarth wanted to catch a fox in the same trap. While he was waiting, he heard the Iron Man walking down the hill. The Iron Man was eating a metal fence and he was walking fast. Hogarth had an idea. He picked up a metal nail and a knife, and he made a sound with them. Clink! Clink! Clink!

ذات ليلة , أراد هوجارث صيد ثعلب بنفس الفخ . وبينما كان ينتظر سمع الرجل الحديدي يسير نازلاً من على التل . كان الرجل الحديدي يأكل سياج معدني ويمشي مسرعاً . لمعت فكرة في رأس هوجارث . إلتقط مسامير معدنية وسكيناً وعمل بهم صوت صلصلة صلصلة صلصلة !

The Iron Man heard the sound and he turned towards the boy. Hogarth was frightened, but he started walking towards the trap and the Iron Man followed him. When they got to the trap, the Iron Man fell into the hole! Hogarth looked at the Iron Man in the deep, dark hole. Then he ran home shouting, "The Iron Man's in the trap!"

سمع الرجل الحديدي الصوت ثم إتجه نحو الصبي. شعر هوجارث بالذعر ( الخوف ) ولكنه استمر في المشي نحو المصيدة والرجل الحديدي يتبعه. عندما وصلوا للمصيدة سقط الرجل الحديدي في الحفرة. نظر هوجارث الى الرجل الحديدي في الحفرة العميقة المظلمة. ثم هرع الى البيت وهو يصيح " الرجل الحديدي سقط في الفخ "

When the farmers saw the Iron Man in the trap, they laughed. The Iron Man couldn't climb out. His eyes looked like red lamps in the hole. The farmers drove their tractors to the hole and they filled it with soil and made a hill. They couldn't see the Iron Man now, so the farmers were very happy, but Hogarth was sorry.

عندما رأى المزارعين الرجل الحديدي في المصيدة , ضحكوا. الرجل الحديدي لم يستطع تسلق الحفرة. عينيه كانت تبدو مثل اللمبات الحمراء في الحفرة . قاد المزارعون جرارتهم الى الحفرة وملأوها بالتراب وجعلوها كالتل . لم يعودوا يستطيعون رؤية الرجل الحديدي الآن ولذلك فرح المزارعون , ولكن هوجارث شعر بالأسى.

A year later, a family was eating lunch on the hill that covered the Iron Man. While they were eating their sandwiches, they saw a big iron hand come out of the ground!

إنقضى عام عندما كانت هناك عائلة تتناول الغداء على التل الذي يغطي الرجل الحديدي. بينما هم يتناولون السندويشات, رأوا ذراع معدنية كبيرة تخرج من الأرض

"Run to the car," shouted the father.

"أهربوا الى السيارة" , صاح الأب.

The Iron Man came up out of the ground and he was very hungry. He ate three new tractors, two cars and a plough! The farmers were frightened, but Hogarth had an idea. He visited the Iron Man and stood in front of him.

صعد الرجل الحديدي خارجا من الأرض وكان جائعا جدا . وتناول ثلاثة جرارات جديدة وسيارتين ومحراث . خاف المزارعين ولكن هوجارث أتته فكرة . ذهب إلى الرجل الحديدي وجلس أمامه.

"Mr Iron Man," shouted Hogarth. "We've got a lot of iron for you. You can have it all, but please stop eating the cars and tractors." The Iron Man stopped and turned to the boy.

"سيدي الرجل الحديدي" " لدينا الكثير من الحديد لك , يمكنك تناولهم كلهم . ولكن من فضلك توقف عن أكل السيارات والجرارات" . توقف الرجل الحديدي عن الأكل وإتجه الى الصبي .

"We're sorry," said Hogarth.

"نحن آسفون" قال هوجارث للرجل الحديدي.

Hogarth and the farmers drove down the hill and the Iron Man followed them. Then they came to a place full of old bikes, cookers, fridges, cars and vans. It was a scrap metal yard!

قاد هوجارث والمزارعين الرجل الحديدي إلى أسفل التل وتبعهم الرجل الحديدي. ثم وصلوا إلى مكان مليء بالدراجات والبوتجازات والثلاجات والسيارات والشاحنات الصغيرة القديمة . هذا المكان عبارة عن ساحة للخردة المعدنية.

"There," said Hogarth. "Eat all you can." The Iron Man was very happy. He sat down and he ate and he ate.

"هناك" قال هوجارث للرجل الحديدي . "تناول كل ما تستطيع" . اصبح الرجل الحديدي سعيد جدا وأكل وأكل .

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **مجاب عنها :**

- Hogarth wanted to ..... a fox in the same trap.  
a) **pick up**                      b) **hear**                      c) **cover**                      d) **catch**
- The Iron Man heard the sound and he turned ..... the boy.  
a) **in**                              b) **towards**                      c) **on**                      d) **off**
- When Hogarth and the farmers drove down the hill, the Iron Man ..... them.  
a) **followed**                      b) **walked**                      c) **shouted**                      d) **turned**
- "Eat all you can." said .....  
a) **Iron Man**                      b) **family**                      c) **Hogarth**                      d) **father**
- Hogarth looked at the Iron Man in the ..... hole.

- a) **frightened**      b) deep, dark      c) **happy**      d) **sorry**
- 6- When the farmers saw the Iron Man in the trap, they .....  
a) laughed      b) **walked**      c) **shouted**      d) **picked up**
- 7- The Iron Mans' ..... looked like red lamps in the hole.  
a) **legs**      b) **arms**      c) **hands**      d) eyes
- 8- ..... drove their tractors to the hole.  
a) **The birds**      b) The farmers      c) **Hogarth**      d) **The family**
- 9- "Run to the car," shouted the .....  
a) father      b) **Hogarth**      c) **Farmers**      d) **Iron man**
- 10- The Iron Man came up out of the ground and he was very .....  
a) **sorry**      b) hungry      c) **happy**      d) **frightened**
- 11- ..... ran home shouting, "The Iron Man's in the trap!"  
a) **Tractors**      b) **Family**      c) **Father**      d) Hogarth
- 12- The farmers filled the hole with ..... and made a hill.  
a) **branches**      b) **trap**      c) soil      d) **iron**
- 13- Hogarth was ..... when he saw the Iron Man turning towards him.  
a) **happy**      b) **sorry**      c) **sad**      d) frightened
- 14- Hogarth heard the Iron Man walking ..... the hill .  
a) **up**      b) down      c) **off**      d) **out**
- 15- The Iron Man was eating a metal ..... and he was walking fast.  
a) **car**      b) fence      c) **plough**      d) **nail**
- 16- Hogarth made the sound of Clink! Clink ! by a metal .....  
a) **fence and a van**      b) **nail and a bike**  
c) **fence and a knife**      d) nail and a knife
- 17- The farmers were very happy, but Hogarth was .....  
a) **frightened**      b) sorry      c) **happy**      d) **afraid**
- 18- The Iron Man ..... three new tractors, two cars and a plough!  
a) **cut**      b) **came**      c) ate      d) **drove**
- 19- "Mr Iron Man," ..... Hogarth.  
a) **walked**      b) **followed**      c) **laughed**      d) shouted
- 20- Hogarth started walking towards the ..... and the Iron Man followed him.  
a) trap      b) **hill**      c) **soil**      d) **fence**
- 21- "We're sorry," said .....  
a) **the family**      b) **Hogarth's father**      c) Hogarth      d) **the farmers**

Answer the following questions :

مجاب عنها :

1- Why did the Iron Man fall into the trap?

لماذا سقط الرجل الحديدي في الفخ ؟

- Because Hogarth led him towards it.

2- Why do you think the Iron Man's eyes looked like red lamps?

لماذا تعتقد أن عيون الرجل الحديدي بدت مثل المصابيح الحمراء ؟

- Because the hole was deep and dark.

- OR Because he was angry or frightened.

3- Why did the Iron Man eat a lot when he came out of the ground?

لماذا أكل الرجل الحديدي كثيراً عندما خرج من تحت الأرض ؟

- He was very hungry because he couldn't eat while he was in the trap.

4- What does Hogarth ask the Iron Man to stop doing?

ماذا طلب هوجارث من الرجل الحديدي أن يتوقف عن فعله ؟

- He asks him to stop eating all the cars and tractors.

5- Why did farmers want the Iron Man to stop eating the cars and tractors?

لماذا أراد المزارعين أن يتوقف الرجل الحديدي عن أكل السيارات والجرارات ؟

- Because the farmers needed their cars and tractors for work and they were very expensive to replace.

**6- Why does Hogarth tell the Iron Man that he can eat all the iron in the scrap metal yard?** لماذا أخبر هوجارث الرجل الحديدي أنه يستطيع أكل كل الحديد في ساحة الخردة الحديدية؟

- Because the items in the scrap metal yard are no longer needed; if the Iron Man eats the objects in the scrap metal yard, he won't eat the farmers' vehicles.

**7- Why was Hogarth's idea to take the Iron Man to the scrap metal yard a good idea?** لماذا كانت فكرة هوجارث لأخذ الرجل الحديدي إلى ساحة الخردة المعدنية جيدة؟

- Because the Iron Man would leave the farmers' vehicles alone and he would get a good meal.

**8- Why did Hogarth say sorry to the Iron Man?** لماذا قال هوجارث أسف للرجل الحديدي؟

- Because he felt sorry that the Iron Man had been left in the trap.

**9- Why do you think the Iron Man is happy in the scrap metal yard?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الحديدي كان سعيد في ساحة الخردة المعدنية؟

- Because it is full of metal objects which he likes eating.

**10- What's the scrap metal yard ?** ما هي ساحة الخردة المعدنية؟

- It's a big place full of objects that people no longer need .

**11- Where did the Iron man come out of ?** من أين خرج الرجل الحديدي؟

- The Iron Man came out of the ground .

**12- Why was the Iron man happy ?** لماذا كان الرجل الحديدي سعيد؟

- Because in the scrap metal yard there were a lot of old cars , tractors , bikes, cookers and fridges that he could eat and eat.

**13- Where did the iron man fall into ?** أين سقط الرجل الحديدي؟

- The Iron man fell into the trap in the hole.

**14- How could Hogarth take the Iron Man to the trap ?**

كيف استدرج هوجارث الرجل الحديدي إلى الفخ؟

- He picked up a metal nail and a knife, and he made a sound with them. Clink! Clink! Clink! The Iron Man heard the sound and he turned towards the boy, then he fell into the trap .

**15- What did the farmers fill the hole with ?** بماذا ملأ المزارعين الحفرة؟

- They filled it with soil and made a hill.

**16- Where did Hogarth see the Iron Man come down from ?**

من أين رأى هوجارث الرجل الحديدي قادماً؟

- Hogarth saw the Iron walking down the hill.

**17- What idea did Hogarth have after seeing the Iron Man waling down the hill?**

ما الفكرة التي أتت لهوجارث بعد أن رأى الرجل الحديدي نازلاً من التل؟

- He picked up a metal nail and a knife, and he made a sound with them.

**18- What did Hogarth do when he was frightened ?** ماذا فعل هوجارث عندما كان خائفاً؟

- Hogarth was frightened, but he started walking towards the trap and the Iron Man followed him.

**19- What did Hogarth do after looking at the Iron Man in the deep, dark hole ?**

ماذا فعل هوجارث بعدما نظر الي الرجل الحديدي في ، الحفرة العميقة المظلمة؟

- Hogarth ran home shouting, "The Iron Man's in the trap!"

**20- A year later, where was a family eating lunch ?**

وبعد مرور عام، اين كانت العائلة تتناول وجبة الغداء؟

- On the hill that covered the Iron Man.

**21- Where did the Iron Man come up out of ? How did he feel ?**

من أين خرج الرجل الحديدي ؟ وكيف كان يشعر ؟

- The Iron Man came up out of the ground and he was very hungry.

**22- What did the Iron Man eat after coming up out of the ground ?**

ماذا أكل الرجل الحديدي بعد خروجه من الأرض ؟

- He ate three new tractors, two cars and a plough!

**23- What did Hogarth tell the Iron Man at the scrap metal yard ?**

ماذا اخبر هوجارث الرجل الحديدي في ساحة خردة المعادن ؟

- "There," said Hogarth. "Eat all you can."

**24- Hogarth had two ideas and performed them accurately. What were they?**

هوجارث أتى بفكرتين ونفذهم بدقة . ماذا كانوا ؟

- The first was to make the Iron Man fall into the trap by making a clink with a nail and a knife.

- The second was to make the Iron Man go to the scrap metal yard to eat old objects instead of tractors, vans and ploughs of the farmers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

يجيب عنها الطالب

1- Hogarth wanted the Iron man to eat old objects ..... the new ones.

a) **but**                      b) **instead of**                      c) **and**                      d) **with**

2- One night, Hogarth wanted to catch a ..... in the same trap .

a) **dog**                      b) **bird**                      c) **fish**                      d) **fox**

3- While Hogarth was waiting, he heard the Iron Man walking down the .....

a) **hill**                      b) **cliff**                      c) **mountain**                      d) **trap**

4- The Iron Man was eating a metal ..... and he was walking fast.

a) **knife**                      b) **nail**                      c) **fence**                      d) **yard**

5- Hogarth picked up a metal nail and a knife and he made a ..... with them.

a) **iron**                      b) **hill**                      c) **trap**                      d) **sound**

6- Hogarth was frightened, but he started walking towards the ..... and the Iron Man followed him.

a) **trap**                      b) **plough**                      c) **scrap**                      d) **hole**

7- When they got to the trap, the Iron Man fell into the ..... !

a) **metal**                      b) **hill**                      c) **hole**                      d) **soil**

8- Hogarth looked at the ..... in the deep, dark hole.

a) **tractor**                      b) **fox**                      c) **birds**                      d) **Iron Man**

9- Hogarth ..... home shouting, "The Iron Man's in the trap!"

a) **saw**                      b) **ran**                      c) **ate**                      d) **caught**

10- When the farmers saw the Iron Man in the trap, they .....

a) **laughed**                      b) **walked**                      c) **loved**                      d) **shouted**

11- The Iron Man couldn't climb out. His eyes looked like ..... lamps in the hole.

a) **black**                      b) **white**                      c) **blue**                      d) **red**

12- The farmers drove their tractors to the hole and they filled it with soil and made a .....

a) **hill**                      b) **hole**                      c) **trap**                      d) **yard**

13- They couldn't see the Iron Man now, so the farmers were very ..... , but Hogarth was sorry.

a) **frightened**                      b) **sad**                      c) **sorry**                      d) **happy**

14- There was a family eating lunch on the ..... that covered the Iron Man.

a) **hole**                      b) **cliff**                      c) **hill**                      d) **beach**

- 15- The family saw a big ..... hand .  
 a) **dark**                      b) **iron**                      c) **red**                      d) **deep**
- 16- The Iron Man came up out of the ..... and he was very hungry.  
 a) **plough**                      b) **tractor**                      c) **van**                      d) **ground**
- 17- The Iron Man ate three new tractors, two cars and a ..... !  
 a) **cooker**                      b) **fridge**                      c) **plough**                      d) **bike**
- 18- Hogarth visited the Iron Man and stood ..... of him.  
 a) **with**                      b) **next to**                      c) **behind**                      d) **in front**
- 19- Hogarth shouted "We've got a lot of ..... for you" .  
 a) **iron**                      b) **trap**                      c) **lunch**                      d) **ideas**
- 20- Hogarth said to the Iron Man "We're ..... ,"  
 a) **worry**                      b) **happy**                      c) **frightened**                      d) **sorry**
- 21- The farmers came to a place full of old bikes, ....., fridges and vans.  
 a) **books**                      b) **cookers**                      c) **chairs**                      d) **newspapers**
- 22- The place they came to was a scrap ..... yard!  
 a) **wood**                      b) **paper**                      c) **metal**                      d) **rubber**
- 23- The Iron Man was very ..... . He sat down and he ate and he ate.  
 a) **sorry**                      b) **angry**                      c) **happy**                      d) **sad**
- 24- The father shouted because a ..... came out of the ground.  
 a) **eye**                      b) **head**                      c) **leg**                      d) **hand**
- 25- At the scrap metal yard , the Iron Man could ..... all he can.  
 a) **buy**                      b) **eat**                      c) **damage**                      d) **destroy**
- 26- When did the Iron Man get out of the trap?  
 a) **Immediately after he fell in.**                      b) **Two days after.**  
 c) **After the farmers saw him.**                      d) **After one year.**
- 27- The Iron Man followed the farmers and Hogarth to ..... .  
 a) **a trap**                      b) **a farm with a plough**  
 c) **a scrap metal yard**                      d) **a family eating lunch**
- 28- What did Hogarth hear while he was waiting for the fox ?  
 a) **Clink! Clink! Clink!**                      b) **Sound of the fox.**  
 c) **His father shouting**                      d) **The Iron Man eating a metal fence.**
- 29- What did the Iron Man feel after coming up out of the ground ?  
 a) **Very angry**                      b) **Very sorry**                      c) **Very hungry**                      d) **Very good**
- 30- What was the shouting of Hogarth ?  
 a) **"Run to the car,"**                      b) **"We're sorry,"**  
 c) **"Eat all you can."**                      d) **"The Iron Man's in the trap!"**

Answer the following questions:

يجيب عنها الطالب

- 1- When **they** got to the trap, the Iron Man fell into the hole! What's the pronoun they referring to?
- 2- What was the place that have old bikes , fridges , cookers , cars and vans ?
- 3- What did Hogarth want to catch ?
- 4- Who did Hogarth hear down the hill ?
- 5-What was the Iron Man doing while walking fast ?
- 6- Where did the sound Clink! Clink! Clink! come from ?
- 7- What did the Iron Man hear and what did he do ?
- 8- What happened when the Iron Man and Hogarth got to the trap ?
- 9- Who looked at the Iron Man in the deep, dark hole ?
- 10- What did the farmers do when they saw the Iron Man in the trap ?
- 11- When The Iron Man couldn't climb out what did he look like ?
- 12- Do you think the Iron Man considered Hogarth a friend ?
- 13- When the farmers couldn't see the Iron Man , what was their feeling



and how did Hogarth feel ?

- 14- What did the family see while they were eating their sandwiches ?
- 15- Why did the father shout? What did he say ?
- 16- How did the farmers feel when they saw the Iron Man eating ?
- 17- What idea did Hogarth have after eating the tractors , cars and a plough?
- 18- What did Hogarth offer the Iron Man ?
- 19- What did Hogarth say to the Iron Man after eating cars, tractors and plough?
- 20- What did Hogarth say to the Iron Man after turning to the boy ?
- 21- What did Hogarth say to the Iron Man at the scrap metal yard ?
- 22- Where did Hogarth and the farmers drive and what did the Iron Man do?
- 23- How did the Iron Man feel while eating ?
- 24- Why did Hogarth make a sound with a nail and a knife?
- 25- The farmers were happy . Hogarth was sorry . Explain why?
- 26- What did the boy do when the Iron man turned towards him at first ?
- 27- What did the boy do when the Iron man turned towards him secondly?
- 28- Hogarth tried to catch a fox , but he caught the Iron Man. How?
- 29- Explain how was Hogarth brave and clever .
- 30- Was the hill natural? Why? Why not?
- 31- Describe the feelings of these people:
  - A) Hogarth when the Iron Man was coming towards him.
  - B) The family when they saw the Iron Man's hand.
  - C) The farmers when the Iron Man fell into the trap.
  - D) The Iron Man when he was able to eat the objects in the scrap metal yard.
  - E) Hogarth when the farmers covered the Iron Man in the hole.

## Chapter ( 3 )

flew down	وقع فى	a way	طريقة
wings	أجنحة	dragon	تنين
tail	ذيل	forests	غابات
space rocket	صاروخ فضائى	hurt / hurt / hurt	يجرح / يؤذى
land , ed , ed	يهبط	wait , ed , ed	ينتظر
Australia	أستراليا ( قارة )	fly back / flew / flown	يعود طائراً
desert	صحراء	third time	المررة الثالثة
huge	ضخم	cover, ed , ed	يغطى
nobody	لا أحد	destroy , ed , ed	يدمر
hear about , d , d	يسمع عن	an idea	فكرة
test	إختبار	the strongest	الأقوى
win / won / won	يفوز	earth	الأرض

### Text of chapter 3

One night, the people saw a beautiful star. It was red and it grew bigger and bigger until it was as big as the moon. Then one night, an unusual animal flew down to earth. It had two large wings and a long tail. It was a huge dragon and it flew as fast as a space rocket. It landed on Australia! It covered the country from the desert to the sea.

ذات ليلة , رأى الناس نجمة جميلة. كانت حمراء كبيرة حتى أصبحت أكبر وأكبر حتى انها أصبحت كبيرة مثل القمر. ثم فى ليلة أخرى ظهر حيوان غريب يطير الى الكرة الأرضية. كان له جناحان كبيران و ذيل طويل. كان تنين ضخم وطار بسرعة مثل الصاروخ الفضائى. نزل على أستراليا وغطى البلد من الصحراء الى البحر.

Nobody knew what to do. They all waited. The next day, the dragon asked for food. It was hungry and it wanted to eat people, forests and animals! The people were very frightened and they wanted to destroy the dragon. They tried many times, but they couldn't hurt the dragon. It was too big.

لم يعرف أحد ماذا يفعل. وانتظروا. في اليوم التالي، طلب التنين طعاما. فقد كان جائعا وأراد أن يأكل الناس والغابات والحيوانات. ارتعب الناس وأرادوا أن يدمروا التنين. حاولوا أكثر من مرة ولكنهم لم يستطيعوا إصابة التنين. فقد كان كبيرا جداً

Hogarth heard about the dragon and he was sure that the Iron Man could help. Hogarth asked the Iron Man, "Please can you think of a way to help us destroy the dragon?"

سمع هوجارث عن التنين وكان متأكداً أن الرجل الحديدي يستطيع مساعدتهم. سأل هوجارث الرجل الحديدي "من فضلك، هل يمكنك التفكير في طريقة لمساعدتنا على تدمير التنين؟"

The Iron Man sat down and he thought. Then he had an idea! The Iron Man went to Australia and found the dragon.

جلس الرجل الحديدي وأخذ يفكر. ثم وافته فكرة. ذهب الرجل الحديدي إلى استراليا ووجد التنين.

"This is a test," he said to the dragon. "Who is the strongest?"

"هذا إختبار" تحدث الرجل الحديدي إلى التنين. من الأقوى؟

The dragon laughed because the Iron Man was as big as a tree, but the dragon was as big as Australia! The Iron Man wasn't worried. He sat on the ground and made a huge fire around him. The fire grew hotter and hotter. When the Iron Man was as hot as the sun, he stood up. He said to the dragon, "Fly to the sun and sit in its fire."

ضحك التنين لأن الرجل الحديدي كان كبير مثل الشجرة ولكن التنين كان كبير مثل استراليا. لم يكن الرجل الحديدي قلق. جلس الرجل الحديدي على الأرض وصنع نار كبيرة حوله. اشتعلت النار واصبحت حارة وحارة. وعندما أصبح الرجل الحديدي ساخنا مثل الشمس وقف وقال للتنين "طر إلى الشمس واجلس في ناراها".

The dragon flew to the sun and sat there. The people watched. When he came back to earth, the Iron Man sat in his fire again and told the dragon, "Fly back to the sun."

طار التنين إلى الشمس وجلس هناك. كان الناس يشاهدون ما يحدث عندما عاد التنين إلى الأرض. جلس الرجل الحديدي مرة أخرى في النار التي صنعها وتحدث إلى التنين مرة أخرى "طر عاندا إلى الشمس".

The dragon did this, but it was very hard. When the Iron Man asked him a third time, the dragon said, "No, I can't! It's too much!"

فعل التنين ما أراد الرجل الحديدي ولكن الشمس كانت حارة جدا. وعندما طلب الرجل الحديدي من التنين فعلها مرة ثالثة قال التنين "لا أستطيع انها فوق الإحتمال".

"Then I've won," shouted the Iron Man.

صاح الرجل الحديدي "إذن لقد فزت عليك"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **مجاب عنها :**

- The ..... was red and it grew bigger and bigger.  
a) moon                      b) sky                      c) star                      d) sun
- "Then I've won," shouted the .....  
a) people                      b) Hogarth                      c) dragon                      d) Iron Man
- The dragon had two large wings and a long .....  
a) tail                      b) wing                      c) space rocket                      d) star
- The dragon ..... on Australia!  
a) found                      b) laughed                      c) heard                      d) landed
- The dragon asked people for .....  
a) wings                      b) food                      c) tail                      d) earth

- 6- The dragon wanted to eat ..... , forests and animals!  
 a) **iron**                      b) **fence**                      c) **people**                      d) **tractors**
- 7- The people were very ..... and they wanted to destroy the dragon.  
 a) **strong**                      b) **sorry**                      c) **happy**                      d) **frightened**
- 8- The people couldn't hurt the dragon. It was too .....  
 a) **big**                      b) **small**                      c) **worried**                      d) **happy**
- 9- Hogarth was ..... that the Iron Man could help.  
 a) **not sure**                      b) **sure**                      c) **sorry**                      d) **worried**
- 10- The ..... said, "No, I can't! It's too much!"  
 a) **farmers**                      b) **people**                      c) **Iron Man**                      d) **dragon**
- 11- The dragon flew as fast as a .....  
 a) **desert**                      b) **star**                      c) **space rocket**                      d) **moon**
- 12- The Iron Man went to ..... and found the dragon.  
 a) **sun**                      b) **Australia**                      c) **sea**                      d) **forests**
- 13- The dragon ..... because the Iron Man was as big as a tree.  
 a) **frightened**                      b) **worried**                      c) **laughed**                      d) **stood up**
- 14- The Iron Man sat on the ground and made a huge ..... around him.  
 a) **forest**                      b) **desert**                      c) **fire**                      d) **sun**
- 15- When the Iron Man was ..... the sun , he stood up.  
 a) **hottest**                      b) **hot**                      c) **hotter**                      d) **as hot as**
- 16- The dragon flew back to the sun, but it was very .....  
 a) **hard**                      b) **easy**                      c) **good**                      d) **quick**

Answer the following questions :

مجاب عنها :

- 1- **What happened in Australia?**                      ماذا حدث في أستراليا ؟  
 - A dragon flew down to earth and covered the country.
- 
- 2- **What did the dragon ask for?**                      ماذا طلب التنين من الناس ؟  
 - It asked for food.
- 
- 3- **Why couldn't the people destroy the dragon?**                      لماذا لم يستطع الناس تدمير التنين ؟  
 - Because it was too big.
- 
- 4- **What did the Iron Man do in the test?**                      ماذا فعل الرجل الحديدي في الاختبار ؟  
 - He sat on the ground and made a huge fire around him.
- 
- 5- **What did the Iron Man ask the dragon to do?**                      ماذا طلب الرجل الحديدي من التنين ؟  
 - He asked the dragon to fly to the sun and sit there.
- 
- 6- **Do you think destroying the dragon was a good idea? Why / Why not?**                      هل تعتقد أن تدمير التنين كانت فكرة جيدة ؟ لماذا ؟ / لم لا ؟  
 - If - Yes, because it was eating people, forests and animals.  
 - If - No ,because it may hurt them.
- 
- 7- **Why wasn't the Iron Man worried?**                      لماذا لم يكن الرجل الحديدي قلق ؟  
 - Because he was confident **واثق** of his power and that he had ideas to destroy the dragon.  
 - Or - He could do good **خير** for people and he wanted people trust him.
- 
- 8- **Why do you think that Hogarth thought the Iron Man could help?**                      لماذا تعتقد أن هوجارث كان مؤمنا بأن الرجل الحديدي سيساعد الناس ؟  
 - Because he was very strong.
- 
- 9- **Why do you think that the Iron Man wanted to help the people in Australia?**                      لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الحديدي أراد أن يساعد الناس في أستراليا ؟  
 - Because the dragon wanted to eat them and their animals.

- Or - Because he considered Hogarth a friend and wanted to carry out **ينفذ** his order after providing him with his food.

**10- Why do you think that the dragon wanted to do the test?**

لماذا تعتقد أن التنين أراد أن يدخل الاختبار ؟

- To prove that he was stronger than the Iron Man.

**11- Were you surprised that the Iron Man was stronger than the dragon?**

**Why / Why not?**

هل كنت مندهشاً أن الرجل الحديدي أقوى من التنين ؟ لماذا ؟ لم لا ؟

- If- Yes, because the dragon was as big as Australia and the Iron Man was as big as a tree.

- If- No, because good must overcome bad in the end.

**12- Where did the dragon fly before the test ?** ( أول مرة ) إلى أي جهة طار التنين قبل الاختبار ؟

- The dragon flew to the earth.

**13- Where did the dragon fly after the test ?** ( ثانی مرة ) إلى أي جهة طار التنين بعد الاختبار ؟

- The dragon flew to the sun and sat there.

**14- What did the dragon fly as fast as ?**

بأي سرعة طار التنين ؟

- As fast as a space rocket.

**15- Did the people try to destroy the dragon? Why?** لماذا ؟ هل حاول الناس تدمير التنين ؟

- Yes, they did. But, they couldn't hurt the dragon. It was too big.

- Because it was hungry and wanted to eat people, forests and animals!

**16- Was the Iron Man frightened of the dragon?** هل كان الرجل الحديدي خائفا من التنين ؟

- No, the Iron Man wasn't worried about the dragon.

**17- Was the dragon stronger than the Iron Man?** هل كان التنين أقوى من الرجل الحديدي ؟

- No, the Iron Man was stronger than the dragon although the dragon was bigger.

**18- What was the star like ? Describe the star.**

ماوصفك للنجم؟ - اوصف النجم

- It was red and it grew bigger and bigger until it was as big as the moon.

**19- What was the unusual animal in fact?**

ماذا كان الحيوان الغير عادي في الحقيقة؟

- It was a huge dragon and it flew as fast as a space rocket.

**20- What did Hogarth ask the Iron Man to do ?**

ماذا طلب هوجارث من الرجل الحديدي؟

- Hogarth asked the Iron Man to think of a way to help them destroy the dragon.

**21- Why do you think the Iron Man said that he is stronger than the dragon?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل الحديدي قال أنه أقوى من التنين ؟

- Because he sat in the fire, but the dragon couldn't sit in the sun.

**22- How do you think the Iron Man and the dragon are similar?**

كيف تعتقد أن الرجل الحديدي والتنين متشابهان ؟

- They wanted to eat the wrong things and people were afraid of them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **يجيب عنها الطالب**

1- The star was red and it grew bigger and bigger until it was as big as the

a) **star**

b) **earth**

c) **moon**

d) **sun**

2- The dragon had two ..... wings and a long tail.

a) **medium**

b) **good**

c) **small**

d) **large**

3- The huge dragon flew ..... a space rocket.

a) **as huge as**

b) **as fast as**

c) **as big as**

d) **as hot as**

4- The ..... landed on Australia .

a) **sun**

b) **moon**

c) **Iron Man**

d) **dragon**

- 5- The next day, the dragon asked for .....  
 a) **drink**                      b) **food**                      c) **the Iron Man**                      d) **desert**
- 6- The dragon wanted to eat ..... , people and animals!  
 a) **fences**                      b) **rocket**                      c) **forests**                      d) **fire**
- 7- People tried many times, but they couldn't ..... the dragon .  
 a) **hurt**                      b) **land**                      c) **watch**                      d) **help**
- 8- Hogarth heard about the dragon and he was sure that the Iron Man could .....  
 a) **think**                      b) **ask**                      c) **hurt**                      d) **help**
- 9- Hogarth asked the Iron Man, "Please can you think of a way to help us ..... the dragon?"  
 a) **destroy**                      b) **land**                      c) **fly**                      d) **shout**
- 11- The Iron Man went to ..... and found the dragon.  
 a) **Africa**                      b) **Asia**                      c) **America**                      d) **Australia**
- 12- The Iron Man said to the dragon "Who is the .....?"  
 a) **fly back**                      b) **won**                      c) **strongest**                      d) **a test**
- 13- The dragon was as big as Australia but, the Iron Man was as big as .....  
 a) **a tree**                      b) **the sun**                      c) **the moon**                      d) **a dragon**
- 14- The Iron Man wasn't ..... of the dragon.  
 a) **happy**                      b) **afraid**                      c) **strong**                      d) **good**
- 15- What did the Iron Man do after sitting on the ground? - .....  
 a) **Ate a fire**                      b) **Laughed**                      c) **Shouted**                      d) **Made a huge fire**
- 16- When did the Iron Man stand up ?  
 a) **When he became angry**                      b) **When he became hungry**  
 c) **When he became as hot as the sun**  
 d) **When the dragon laughed at him.**
- 17- What was the first speech between the Iron Man and the dragon ?  
 a) **"No, I can't! It's too much!"**                      b) **"Fly back to the sun."**  
 c) **"Fly to the sun and sit in its fire."**                      d) **" This is a test. "**
- 18- Where did the Iron Man make the fire ?  
 a) **Around him.**                      b) **On the sun.**  
 c) **In Australia.**                      d) **From the desert to the sea.**
- 19- The Iron Man told the dragon three times to fly .....  
 a) **to Australia**                      b) **around the earth**  
 c) **to the scrap metal yard**                      d) **to the sun**
- 20- "This is a test," .....  
 a) **the dragon said to the Iron Man**  
 b) **the Iron Man said to the dragon**  
 c) **people said to the Iron Man**                      d) **Hogarth said to the Iron Man**
- 21- The dragon covered the country from the .....  
 a) **sea to the beach**                      b) **forest to the sun**  
 c) **desert to the sea**                      d) **star to the sun**

Answer the following questions :

يجيب عنها الطالب

- 1- What flew down to the earth ?
- 2- What was the unusual animal like ?
- 3- Where did the dragon land ?
- 4- What did the people do with the dragon ?
- 5- What did the dragon ask for ?
- 6- What did the dragon want to eat ?
- 7- How did the people feel towards the dragon ? What did they decide to do ?
- 8- Could the people hurt the dragon ? Why ?
- 9- Who heard about the dragon and wanted to help people ?
- 10- What did Hogarth decide to do to the Australian people ?

- 11- What did the Iron Man do when Hogarth asked him for help ?
- 12- What did the dragon do to help Hogarth and the people ?
- 13- What did the Iron Man tell the dragon the first time ?
- 14- Why did the dragon laugh when he saw the Iron Man ?
- 15- How did the Iron Man feel about the dragon's words ?
- 16- Was the Iron Man afraid of the dragon ? How do you know ?
- 17- What was the fire like ?
- 18- What was the Iron Man like in the fire ?
- 19- What did the Iron Man say to the dragon when he was as hot as the sun?
- 20- Where did the dragon fly and sit on?
- 21- What did the Iron Man do when the dragon came back to earth ?
- 22- The dragon did this, but it was very **hard**. What was hard ?
- 23- When the Iron Man asked him a third time, what did the dragon say?
- 24- What did the Iron Man say to the dragon at last ?
- 25- "No, I can't! It's too much!" . Who said that ? Why?
- 26- Describe the dragon.
- 27- How fast did the dragon fly ?

## Chapter ( 4 )

go back / went / gone	يعود	frighten , ed , ed	يخيف
show , ed , ed / shown	يظهر - يبين	sing / sang / sung	يغنى
fly around / flew / flown	يطير حول	from that day	منذ ذلك اليوم
hero	بطل	song	اغنية
kind	ودود	understand / understood / understood	يفهم
sorry	نادم / آسف	look at , ed , ed	ينظر إلى
every night	كل ليلة	look up , ed , ed	ينظر لأعلى
the earth	الأرض	while	بينما

### Text of chapter 4

You've won," said the dragon. "I'll do what you want now, but I won't go back to the sun." The Iron Man asked the dragon, "Why did you want to frighten the people?"

" لقد ربحت " قال التنين . " سأفعل ما تريد ولكن لن أذهب إلى الشمس مرة أخرى " فسأله الرجل الحديدي " لماذا تريد أن تخيف الناس ؟ "

The dragon looked at the ground. "I don't know why," he said. "I'm sorry."

نظر التنين إلى الارض وقال " لا أعرف لماذا " ثم قال " أنا آسف . "

Then the Iron Man asked him, "What can you do to show that you are sorry?"

ثم سأل الرجل الحديدي التنين " ماذا يمكنك فعله لترى الناس أنك نادم ؟ "

"I can sing!" said the dragon.

قال التنين : أستطيع أن أغنى

" Good. You can sing for us," said the Iron Man.

"It will make the people happy."

" حسناً . يمكنك أن تغنى لنا " هذا سيجعل الناس سعداء . "

"I will," said the dragon.

قال التنين : سأفعل

So every night after that day, the dragon flew around the earth and sang. The people looked up and watched the dragon, but they weren't frightened. They liked the song. From that day, the earth became a happy place.

ولذلك كل ليلة من بعد هذا اليوم طار التنين حول الأرض وغنى . نظر الناس إلى أعلى وشاهدوا التنين ولكنهم لم يعودوا خائفين. أحب الناس الأغنية منذ هذا اليوم , فلقد أصبحت الأرض مكاناً سعيداً .

Now the Iron Man was a hero and all the people liked him. He went back to his scrap metal yard and people sent him old cars, fridges and nails to eat. While he was eating, he listened to the dragon's song. Now that the people understood the Iron Man and the dragon, they were kind to them, and the Iron Man and the dragon were kind to the people.

الآن أصبح الرجل الحديدي بطل و أحبه الناس . وعاد الى ساحة الخردة المعدنية وأصبح الناس يرسلون إليه السيارات والثلاجات والمسامير القديمة ليأكلها . وبينما كان يأكل سمع أغنية التنين . الآن الناس فهمت الرجل الحديدي والتنين واصبحوا عطوفين عليهم وأيضا اصبح الرجل الحديدي والتنين ودودين مع الناس.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: : **مجاب عنها :**

- 1- The Iron Man asked the dragon, "Why did you want to .....the people?"  
a) frighten                      b) **eat**                      c) **understand**                      d) **like**
- 2- The dragon said that he can .....  
a) **want**                      b) **send**                      c) sing                      d) **song**
- 3- The Iron Man knew that the song will make people .....  
a) **worried**                      b) **kind**                      c) **frightened**                      d) happy
- 4- Every night after that day, the ..... flew around the earth.  
a) **people**                      b) dragon                      c) **Iron Man**                      d) **Hogarth**
- 5- After winning , the Iron Man and the earth became a ..... place.  
a) **dark**                      b) **deep**                      c) **sorry**                      d) happy
- 6- Now the people ..... the Iron Man and the dragon.  
a) **went back**                      b) **said**                      c) understood                      d) **flew**
- 7- The Iron Man became a ..... and all the people liked him.  
a) hero                      b) **kind**                      c) **happy**                      d) **frightened**
- 8- The Iron Man went back to his .....  
a) **sky**                      b) **cliff**                      c) scrap metal yard                      d) **beach**
- 9- While he was eating, the Iron Man listened to the dragon's .....  
a) **fly around**                      b) song                      c) **sorry**                      d) **sing**
- 10- " You've won," said the .....  
a) **Hogarth**                      b) **people**                      c) **Iron Man**                      d) dragon
- 11- " Good. You can sing for us," said .....  
a) **dragon**                      b) **Hogarth**                      c) the Iron Man                      d) **people**
- 12- When the people listened to the dragon's song , they weren't .....  
a) **sorry**                      b) **kind**                      c) frightened                      d) **happy**
- 13- The dragon looked at the ..... when he was saying sorry.  
a) **people**                      b) ground                      c) **sun**                      d) **earth**
- 14- People ..... the Iron Man old cars, fridges and nails to eat.  
a) **sang**                      b) **ate**                      c) sent                      d) **showed**
- 15- The Iron Man wanted the dragon to show how he was .....  
a) sorry                      b) **kind**                      c) **frightened**                      d) **happy**

Answer the following questions : : **مجاب عنها :**

- 1- What did dragon feel when he didn't win? بماذا شعر التنين عندما لم يفز ؟  
- He felt sorry for being beaten.

- 2- What do you think the people of Australia felt when the Iron Man won?

ماذا تعتقد أن أهل استراليا شعروا بعد فوز الرجل الحديدي ؟

- They weren't frightened.

**3- Why do you think that the dragon wanted to frighten the people?**

لماذا تعتقد أن التنين أراد أن يخيف الناس ؟

- To show that he was stronger than people.
- OR – To show how big and frightening he was.

**4- Why did the people send the Iron Man old cars, fridges and nails?**

لماذا أرسل الناس سيارات وثلاجات قديمة ومسامير الى الرجل الحديدي ؟

- To eat. Now they trusted and understood him.

**5- Why do you think that the earth became a happy place?**

لماذا تعتقد أن الأرض أصبحت مكان سعيد ؟

- Because the Iron Man and people beat the dragon.
- Because the dragon was no longer frightening.

**6- Why was the Iron Man a hero?**

لماذا أصبح الرجل الحديدي بطل ؟

- Because he could win the test and prove that he was stronger than the dragon.

**7- Why were the people kind to the Iron Man and the dragon?**

لماذا أصبح الناس ودودين مع الرجل الحديدي والتنين ؟

- Because the people understood the Iron Man and the dragon.

**8- "Then I've won," shouted the Iron Man. What did the dragon say when he heard this ?**

لقد فزت " صرخ الرجل الحديدي، ماذا قال التنين عندما سمع هذا؟

- "You've won," said the dragon. I'll do what you want now, but I won't go back to the sun.

**9- How do you think the story ends?**

ما هو اعتقادك لنهاية القصة ؟

- The story ends happily for people , the Iron Man and the dragon. All characters in this story became kind to each other.

**10- What is the moral of this story?**

ما المغزى الأخلاقي ( الهدف ) من القصة ؟

- To learn to understand and be kind to each other.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:: **يجيب عنها الطالب**

1- The Iron Man listened to the dragon's song ..... he was eating.

- a) **but**                                      b) **before**                                      c) **after**                                      d) **while**

2- The dragon flew around the earth and ..... every night.

- a) **sang**                                      b) **liked**                                      c) **became**                                      d) **laughed**

3- The Iron Man ..... back to his scrap metal yard again.

- a) **sent**                                      b) **ate**                                      c) **went**                                      d) **said**

4- At the end, the people were kind to .....

- a) **the Iron Man only**                                      b) **the Iron Man and the dragon**  
c) **the dragon only**                                      d) **Hogarth and the dragon.**

5- When did the dragon sing after that day?

- a) **Every morning**                                      b) **Every night**  
c) **Every week**                                      d) **Every year**

6- Who said that he could sing to make people happy?

- a) **Hogarth**                                      b) **People**                                      c) **The Iron Man**                                      d) **The dragon**

7- ..... , "Why did you want to frighten people?"



- a) **The Iron Man asked the dragon**                      b) **The dragon asked the Iron Man**  
 c) **Hogarth asked the Iron Man**                      d) **The Iron asked man Hogarth**
- 8- Where did the dragon look at while he was saying sorry?  
 a) **The ground**    b) **The sun**  
 c) **The sky**    d) **The Iron Man's eyes**
- 9- At the End of the story , the Iron Man ..... the test.  
 a) **broke**    b) **killed**    c) **ate**    d) **won**
- 10- There was one thing the dragon refused to do. What was it ?  
 a) **To make people happy.**    b) **To sing a song.**  
 c) **to go back to the sun.**    d) **To show that he is sorry**
- 11- All the characters became kind to each other after .....  
 a) **singing with each other**    b) **frightening each other**  
 c) **looking at the ground**    d) **understanding each other**
- 12- Who said that the song would make people happy ?  
 a) **People**    b) **Hogarth**    c) **The dragon**    d) **The Iron Man**
- 14- The Iron Man asked the dragon ..... the dragon said  
 " I don't know why. "  
 a) **"What can you do to show that you are sorry?"**  
 b) **"Why did you want to frighten the people?"**  
 c) **"Good. You can sing for us,"**    d) **"I won't go back to the sun."**

Answer the following questions :

يجيب عنها الطالب

- 1- How was the Iron Man stronger than the dragon?  
 2- Who felt happy in the story? Why?  
 3- "Why did you want to frighten the people?" Who asked this to whom?  
 4- What was the dragon looking at when he said , "I don't know why," and said "I'm sorry."  
 5- "Good. You can sing for us," Who said this to whom?  
 6- How did the dragon make people happy ?  
 7- How did the people feel when the dragon sang ?  
 8- What did people send the Iron Man when he went back to his scrap metal yard ?  
 9- What happened while the Iron Man was eating ?  
 10- What happened in the end ?  
 11- "I'll do what you want now," . Why did the dragon say that ?  
 12- " I can sing " who said that ? Why?  
 13- The sun is considered an important part for beating the dragon. Explain that.  
 14- About what the dragon said " I don't know why " ?  
 15- Who ordered the dragon to sing to make people happy?  
 16- Why did all people like the Iron Man?  
 17- What didn't the dragon want to do ?  
 18- When did the dragon, the Iron Man and people become kind to each other?  
 19- In this story , there was only one character that wasn't frightened . Who?  
 20- Do you think a child like Hogarth was braver than his father and people?  
 21- Through the story, show that a child can help older people. متفوقين  
 22- What do you learn from this story ?  
 Or- What does the story teach us ?